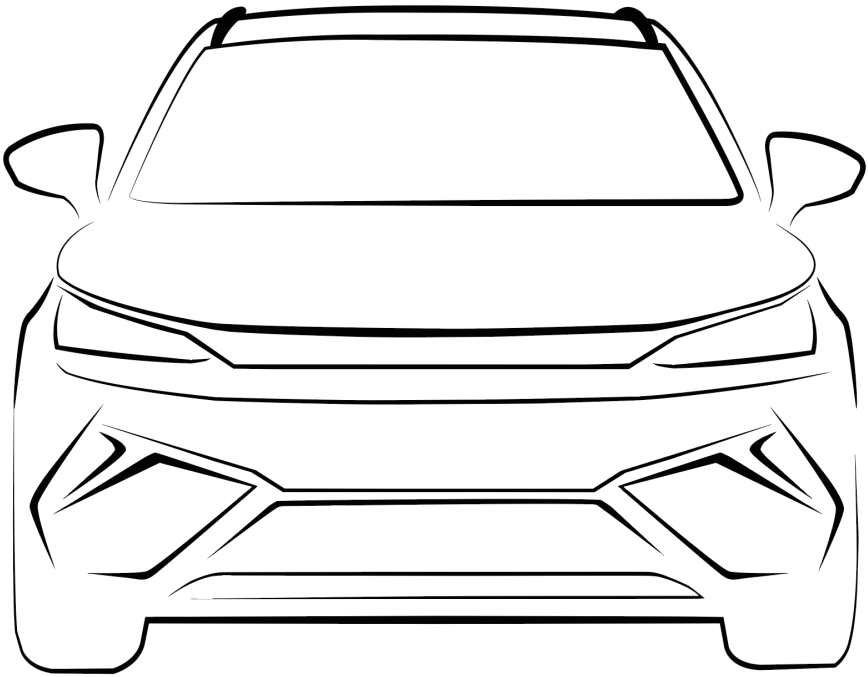
BYD ATTO 3 EVO

OWNER'S MANUAL



Foreword

Thank you for choosing BYD. To better use and maintain the vehicle, please read this manual carefully and keep it for future reference.

Special instructions: BYD Auto Co., Ltd. recommends that you choose genuine spare parts and use, maintain, and repair the vehicle in accordance with this manual. The use of non-genuine spare parts to replace or modify the vehicle will affect the performance of the entyre vehicle, especially its safety and durability. Vehicle damage and performance issues caused thereby will not be covered by the warranty. In addition, vehicle modifications may also violate national laws and regulations and local government regulations.

Thank you again for choosing BYD. Your valuable comments and suggestions are welcome. To enjoy better services, please provide your accurate contact information. If there is any change to the information, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider in a timely manner to update the information in the system. You are also advised to pay attention to the relevant national laws and regulations and local policies, and register the vehicle as soon as possible; otherwise vehicle registration may fail.

The descriptions marked with the asterisk (*) in this manual are specific to only some model configurations, and applicable only when the vehicle has these configurations. If there is any difference with the vehicle you purchased, the configuration of the actual vehicle shall prevail.

Pay attention to the "REMINDER", "CAUTION" and "WARNING" symbols in this manual, and follow the instructions carefully to avoid injury or damage. These symbols are defined as follows:

WARNING

Items that must be observed to ensure personal safety.

CAUTION

Items that must be observed to avoid damage to the vehicle.

REMINDER

Items that must be observed to facilitate maintenance.

is a safety mark to indicate an operation that should not be performed or an event that should not happen.

This manual is expected to help you use the product correctly, and does not provide any description of the configuration and software version of this product. For details about the product configuration and software version, please refer to the contract (if any) related to this product, or consult the dealer who sold the product to you.

Sustainability

As a pure electric passenger vehicle, the BYD ATTO3 is an environmentally friendly product. Please visit https://reach.bydeurope.com for environmental protection information about the vehicle.

It is everyone's responsibility to protect the environment. Please use this vehicle properly and dispose of any waste and cleaning materials according to the corresponding local laws and regulations.

Contact Us

If you require assistance or clarification on policies or procedures, please contact the customer service centre.

E-mail: Autoservice.contact@byd.com

Call 00800-10203000 for 24/7 roadside assistance or customer service (9: 00-18: 00, Monday-Saturday).

Copyright © BYD Auto Co., Ltd. All rights reserved.

No part of this document may be reproduced, copied, stored, translated, or transmitted electronically or in any other form without prior written consent and authorisation of BYD Auto Co., Ltd.

All rights reserved

Illustration Index

Exterior.....7
Dashboard..... 8
Centre Console.....9
Doors..... 10

Safety

Seat Belts.....12
Seat Belt Overview..... 12
Using Seat Belts.....12
Airbags..... 15
Airbag Overview..... 15
Airbag Types..... 16
Airbag Triggering Conditions..... 18
Child Restraint Systems..... 21
Child Restraint Systems..... 21
Anti-theft Alarm System.....27
Anti-theft Alarm System.....27
Data Collection and Processing..... 28
Data Collection and Processing.....28

Instrument Cluster

Instrument Cluster..... 34
Instrument Cluster View.....34
Instrument Cluster Indicators.....35

Controller Operation

Doors and Keys.....46
Key Overview.....46
Locking/Unlocking Doors..... 50
Smart Access and Start System..... 57
Child Protection Lock.....58
Seat..... 59
Seat Precautions..... 59
Adjusting Front Seats..... 60
Folding Rear Seats.....61
Adjusting Rear Seat Head Supports..... 61
Steering Wheel..... 63
Steering Wheel.....63
Wipers..... 66
Wiper Switch.....66
Replacing Wiper Blades..... 67
Rearview Mirrors..... 68
Interior Rearview Mirror.....68
Electric side mirrors..... 69
Switches..... 70
Light Switches..... 70
Driver's Door Switch Group..... 73
Odometer Switch..... 75
Window Control Switch on Passenger Side..... 75
Hazard Warning Light Switch.....75
Mode Switches..... 76
PAB Switch*..... 76
Sunroof Switch*.....77
Interior Light Switch.....79

Using and Driving

Discharging Instructions..... 82
Charging Instructions.....82
Charging.....86
Discharging Instructions..... 94
Charge Port Anti-theft Lock..... 96
Driving Range Display Settings*..... 97
Energy Regeneration Settings..... 97
Batteries..... 98

High-Voltage Battery..... 98
Low-Voltage Battery..... 101
Usage Precautions..... 102
Break-in Period..... 102
Trailer Towing*..... 103
Driving Safety Precautions..... 104
Vehicle Use Suggestions..... 104
Saving Energy and Extending Vehicle Service Life..... 105
Carrying Luggage..... 106
Wading into Water..... 107
Fire Prevention..... 108
Starting and Driving..... 110
Starting the Vehicle..... 110
Driving..... 112
Gear Shift Controls..... 113
Electronic Parking Brake (EPB)..... 114
Automatic Vehicle Hold (AVH)..... 117
Driving Precautions..... 118
Driving Assistance..... 120
Driver Assist System..... 120
Driving Assist..... 126
Forward Safety Assist..... 137
Side Safety Assist..... 149
Rear Safety Assist..... 158
Other Main Functions..... 163
Parking Assist System..... 163
Panoramic View System*..... 167
Head-up Display (HUD)*..... 168
Tyre Pressure Monitoring..... 169
Acoustic Vehicle Alert System (AVAS)... 171
Driver Monitoring System (DMS)..... 171
Occupants Monitoring System(OMS)... 172
Child Presence Detection (CPD)..... 173
Driving Safety Systems..... 175
Intelligence Torque Adaption Control System*..... 179

In-Vehicle Devices

Infotainment System..... 182
Infotainment Touchscreen..... 182
Infotainment System..... 182
Gas Settings..... 183
Voice Assistant..... 184
Google Play..... 185
Gestures and Responses..... 185
Bluetooth Call..... 185
OTA Update..... 186
Phone Projection..... 186
Other apps:..... 192
A/C System..... 192
Front A/C Panel..... 192
A/C Operation Interface..... 193
Function Definition..... 193
Vents..... 196
BYD App..... 197
BYD App..... 197
Account Registration..... 197
Vehicle Condition and Control..... 197
Individual Centre and Vehicle Management..... 198
Storage..... 198
Engine Compartment Storage..... 198
Door Bins..... 198
Centre console storage box..... 198
Glasses Case..... 198
Glove Box..... 199
Centre Console Cubby..... 199
Cup Holder..... 199
Seatback Pockets..... 200

Other Devices..... 200
Sun visor..... 200
Grab Handles..... 201
USB Ports..... 201
12V Auxiliary Power..... 201
Wireless Phone Charger Location*..... 202
Cargo Cover..... 204
Hook..... 204

Maintenance

Maintenance Information..... 206
Maintenance Cycle and Items..... 206
Regular Maintenance..... 208
Regular Maintenance..... 208
Vehicle Corrosion Prevention..... 209
Paint Maintenance Tips..... 209
Exterior Cleaning..... 210
Interior Cleaning..... 212
Self-Maintenance..... 213
Self-Maintenance..... 213
Sunroof Maintenance..... 215
Vehicle Storage..... 216
Bonnet..... 216
Cooling System..... 217
Braking System..... 217
Washer..... 218
A/C System..... 218
Wiper Blades..... 219
Tyres..... 220
Fuses..... 222

When Faults Occur

When Faults Occur..... 226
Reflective Vest..... 226
If Smart Key Battery Is Exhausted..... 226
Emergency Shutdown System..... 226
Vehicle Fire Rescue..... 227
Battery Leakage Rescue..... 227
If the Vehicle Needs Towing..... 228
If a Tyre Goes Flat..... 230

Specifications

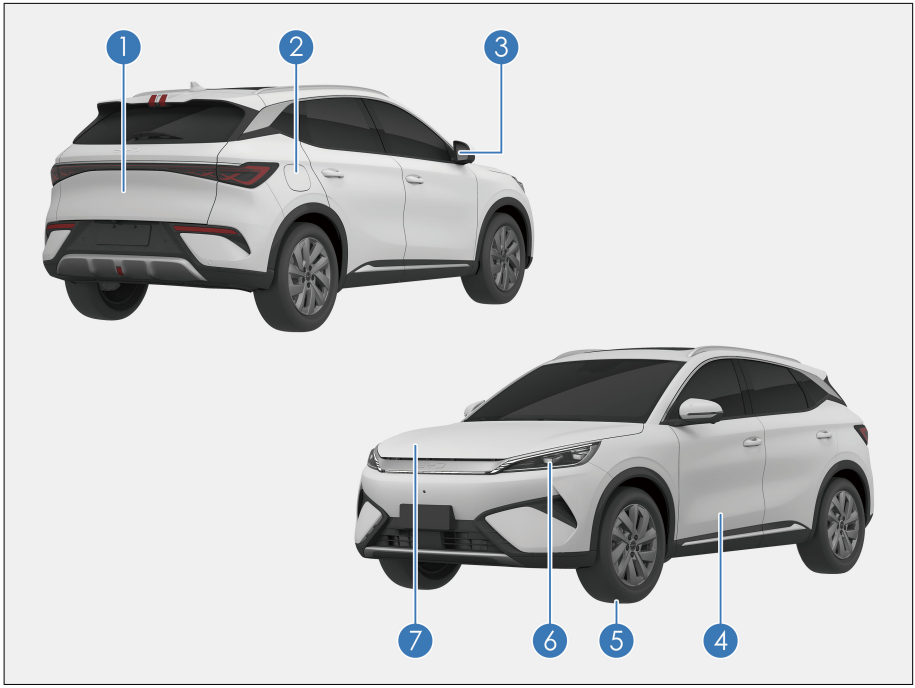
Vehicle Data..... 234
Vehicle Data..... 234
Vehicle Identification..... 238
Information..... 239
Warning Labels..... 239
Transponder Mounting Position..... 241
Declarations of Conformity..... 242
Declarations of Conformity..... 242

Abbreviations

Abbreviations..... 249

Illustration Index

Exterior



1 Unlocking the Boot ***P54***
Carrying Luggage ***P106***
In-Vehicle Tools ***P230***

2 Using Mode 2 Charging Cable* ***P86***
Using AC Charging Piles ***P89***
Using DC Charging Piles ***P90***
External Discharging ***P95***

3 Side Mirror Switches ***P69***

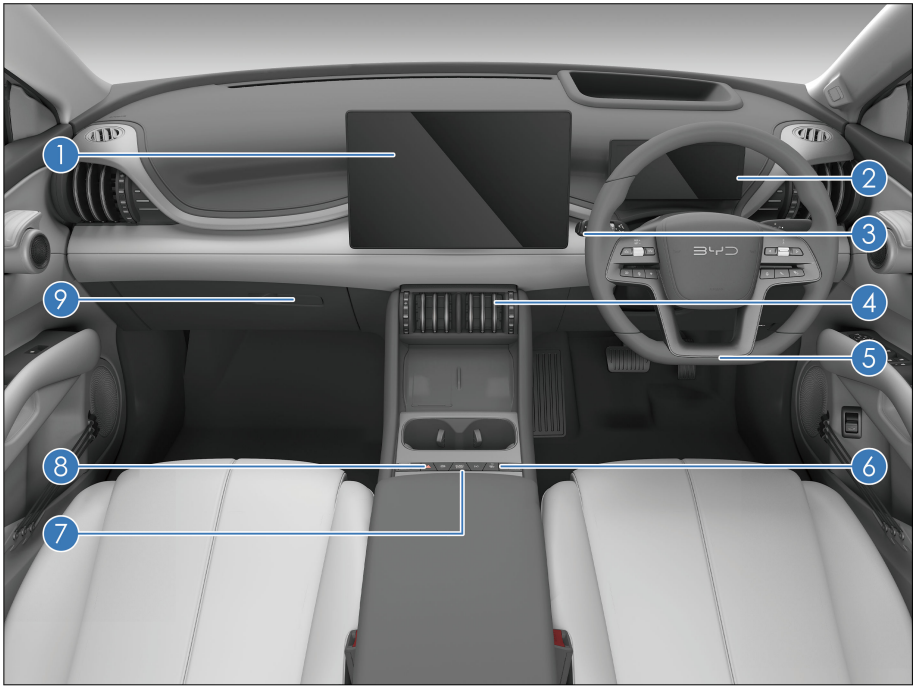
4 Doors ***P51***

5 Tyres ***P220***

6 Combination Light ***P70***

7 Opening the Bonnet ***P216***
Coolant ***P217***
Brake Fluid ***P217***

Dashboard



1 Infotainment Touchscreen ***P182***
A/C Operation Interface ***P193***
A/C Function Definitions ***P193***

2 Instrument Cluster ***P34***

3 Windscreen Wipers and Washer ***P66***
Light Switches ***P70***

4 A/C Vents ***P196***

5 Steering Wheel Switches ***P63***

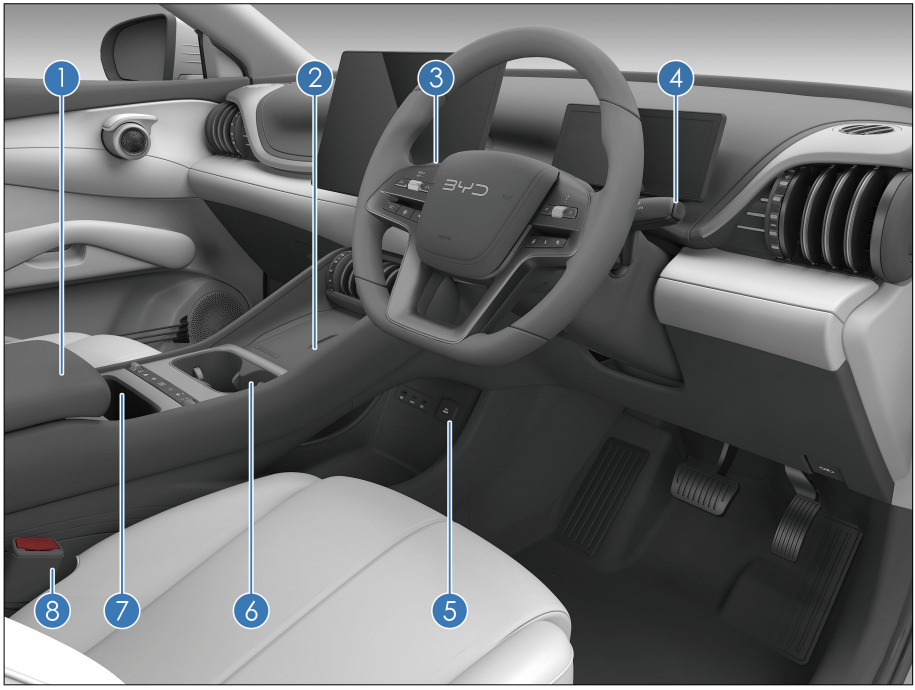
6 Front A/C Panel ***P192***

7 START/STOP Button ***P110***

8 Hazard Warning Light ***P75***

9 Glove Box ***P199***

Centre Console



1 Centre Console Cubby ***P199***

2 Wireless Phone Charger* ***P202***

3 Light Adjustment Switch ***P70***

4 Gear Shift Controls ***P113***

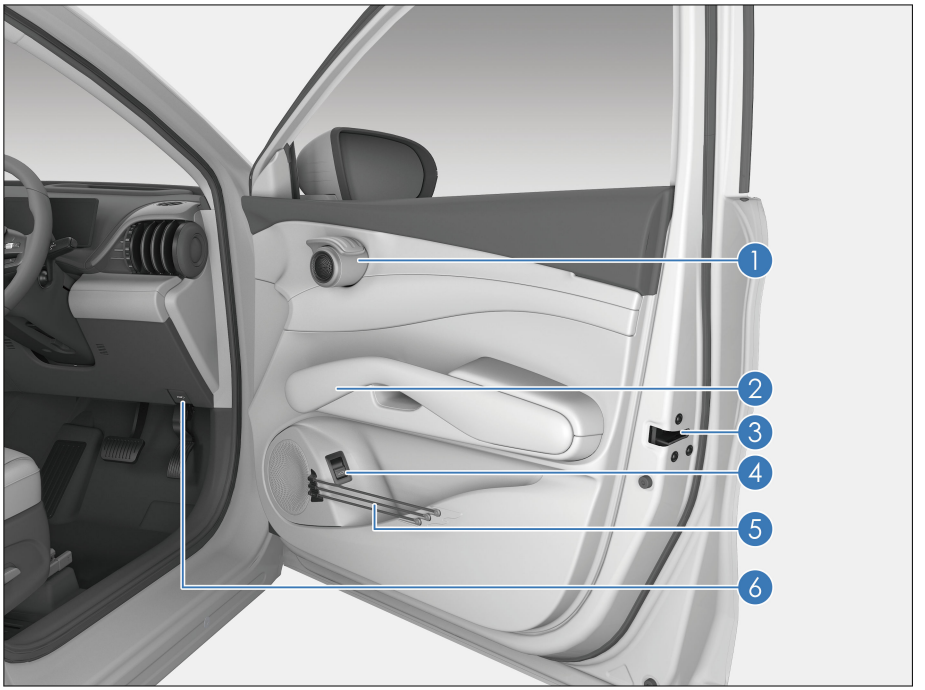
5 12V Auxiliary Power ***P201***

6 Front Seat Cup Holder ***P199***

7 Centre console storage box ***P198***

8 Using Seat Belt ***P12***

Doors



1 Opening with Interior Door Handle ***P51***

2 Power Window Switches ***P73***

Window Lock Switch ***P75***

Central Locking ***P74***

Side Mirror Switches ***P69***

3 Emergency Vehicle Locking with Mechanical Key ***P56***

4 Unlocking the Boot ***P54***

5 Door Bin ***P198***

6 Opening the Bonnet ***P216***

01 SAFETY

Seat Belts..... 12
Airbags..... 15
Child Restraint Systems..... 21
Anti-theft Alarm System..... 27
Data Collection and Processing..... 28

Seat Belts

Seat Belt Overview

Studies have shown that proper use of seat belts can significantly reduce casualties in emergency braking, sudden steering or collisions. Read the following information carefully and observe it strictly.

CAUTION

- Before driving, make sure all occupants are properly buckled. to prevent serious injury or death in emergency braking or in a collision.
- The seat belts are designed primarily to fit adults and are not intended for children. Make sure to choose a child restraint system appropriate for your child's age and size. (see ***P21***).
- If a seat belt is damaged or malfunctions, immediately contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for confirmation and handling. Until then, do not use the corresponding seat.

- BYD has highly emphasised that all occupants should always fasten their seat belts while in the vehicle to prevent serious injury or death.
- Children are encouraged to travel on the rear seats and must be buckled up in appropriate child restraint systems. In case of emergency braking or a collision, unprotected children may be seriously injured and their lives may be endangered. Likewise, do not allow children to ride on someone's lap. This will render the children not adequately protected.

Emergency Locking Retractor (ELR)

- When the driver turns sharply or brakes suddenly, when there is a collision, or when the occupant leans forward too quickly, the seat belt automatically locks to effectively restrain and protect the occupant.
- When the vehicle travels smoothly, seat belts are pulled out and retracted as the occupants move slowly and smoothly, allowing the occupants to move freely.
- If the seat belt locks due to sudden retraction, pull on the seat belt webbing to create retractable slack to pull out the seat belt.

Pretensioner and Force Limiter Function

When a severe front collision occurs and the triggering conditions of the pretensioner are met, the pretensioner quickly retracts part of the seat belt and locks it to improve the protection of the occupant. The force limiter limits the seat-belt restraint force to the occupant's body to a certain extent so as to avoid injury to the occupant due to an excessive restraint force.

WARNING

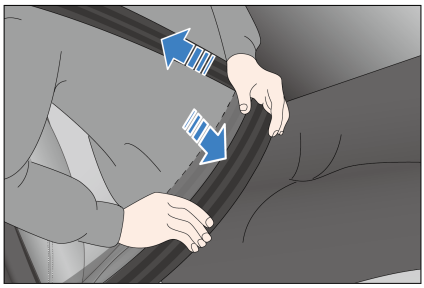
- If the pretensioner function is activated, the seat belt must be replaced.

Using Seat Belts

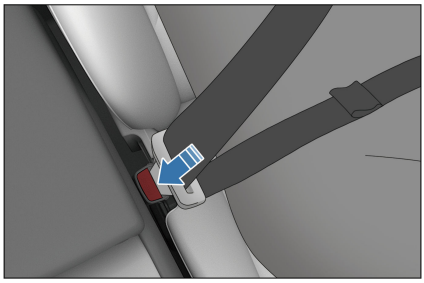
1. Adjust the seat position and seatback angle (see ***P60***).
2. Adjust the position of the three-point seat belt.

- Keep the correct sitting posture and pull out the shoulder belt diagonally

across the entyre shoulder without contacting the neck or falling from the shoulder. Position the lap belt as low as possible around the hip.



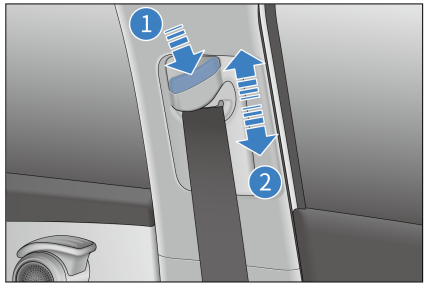
3. Insert the latch into the buckle until it clicks, and then pull it back to make sure it is firmly locked. Do not fasten the belt with any part of the strap twisted.



4. Adjust the height of the (front) seat belts for optimum comfort and protection.

① Press the adjuster release button.

② Move the adjuster up or down to the intended position. Release the button to lock the adjuster.



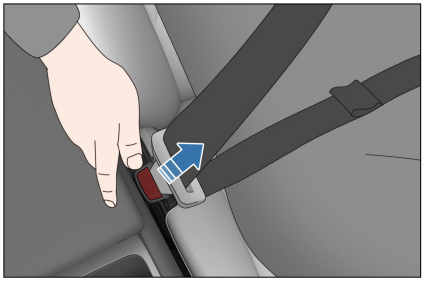
5. Pull the belt firmly to check that the adjuster is locked.

WARNING

- The shoulder belt should cross the centre of the shoulder, The seat belt should be far from the neck and not be liable to slip from the shoulder. otherwise, it cannot function well in the event of emergency braking or accident and may even cause severe injury.
- The lap belt should be positioned as low as possible around the hips to avoid serious injury due to the intense lap belt forces against the abdomen in an accident.
- The seat belt should be fitted tight to the body for better protection.

6. Unlock the seat belt.

- Press the red unlock button on the buckle. The latch plate pops out, and the seat belt automatically retracts. If the seat belt does not retract smoothly and automatically, pull it out and check whether it is twisted.



WARNING

- One seat belt is for one occupant only. Do not allow multiple occupants (including children) to share one seat belt.
- Avoid travelling with the seatback leaning too far back. The seat belt protection performs best when the seatback is upright.
- Make sure that no seat belt or its spring bolt/buckle becomes pressed by the door or rear seatback; otherwise, the seat belt may be damaged.
- Check the seat belts regularly for cuts, wear, looseness, and other abnormalities. If any problem is found, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for confirmation and handling. Until then, do not use the corresponding seat.
- Do not remove, disassemble or modify the seat belts.
- After an accident, have the seat belts checked at a BYD authorised dealer or service provider. Seat belts with pretensioner function* activated must be replaced.
- In the event of a serious accident, even if there is no apparent damage, the seat belt should be replaced along with the seat assembly. The airbag system should also be thoroughly inspected.
- Use an approved model whenever you replace the seat belt.
- Pregnant women need to fasten the seat belts properly and position the lap belt as low as possible around the hips to avoid serious injury from the intense lap belt forces against the abdomen in an accident.
- The method of wearing a rear seat belt is the same as that for a front seat belt. For normal functioning of the rear seat belt, ensure that its latch is inserted into the corresponding buckle during use. The driver should remind passengers to wear seat belts properly.
- Do not insert foreign objects such as coins and clips into the buckle as they prevent proper connection between the latch and buckle.

WARNING

Seat Belt Reminders

If any occupant has not buckled up after the vehicle is started, visual and audible alarms go off and continue until the corresponding seat belt is properly fastened.

- Seat belt reminder indicator

  This indicator flashes if any seat belt is not fastened.

- Display of unfastened belt's seat

  The indicator for the seat with unfastened seat belt lights up.

- Unfastened seat belt reminder*

  If any vehicle occupant has not buckled up after the ignition is

switched on, the seat belt reminder indicator and the indicator associated with the corresponding seat* light up. If the seat belt remains unfastened while driving, in addition to the reminder indicator, an audible alarm is given to alert the driver and the occupants.

- When the driver and the passengers fastened their seat belts, the seat belt reminder indicator turns off and all indicators displayed for the corresponding seats* turn off.

WARNING

- In the event of abnormality or function failure, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider. Do not use the corresponding seat until the functions return to normal.
- When driving, make sure all occupants have their seat belts properly fastened to prevent personal injury or even death in emergency braking or in a collision.

Airbags

Airbag Overview

- The airbag system is a part of supplemental restraint system (SRS) and also a supplement to seats and seat belts. When the vehicle is involved in a serious collision and the airbag system meets its deployment conditions, relevant airbags will rapidly deploy, and along with seat belts, provide additional protection for heads and chests of the occupants, reducing likelibonnet of personal injuries or even death.
- Airbags are divided into front and side types according to the type of collision. The front airbags include a driver airbag and a front passenger airbag, while side airbags include front seat side airbags, curtain airbags and the far side airbag.
- As an integral part of the vehicle's passive safety protection system, the airbag system does not replace seat belts, and must be used in combination with seat belts to maximise protection.

CAUTION

- Occupants must sit in a proper position to maximise the protection provided by seat belts and the airbag system.
- Do not disassemble or assemble airbag components.
- If the seatbacks get wet from rain or splashes, the side airbag system may not work properly.
- Do not use seat covers, as they restrict airbag deployment on the corresponding side in an accident.
- Do not place anything between the side airbag and the occupant.
- Do not apply excessive force to the side of seats equipped with side airbags.
- After a crash, even if the airbag did not deploy and the pretensioner did not lock the seat belt, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for inspection as soon as possible to ensure that the airbag system functions correctly.
- The airbag warning light stays on in the presence of certain system faults. If this light stays on, head to a BYD authorised dealer or

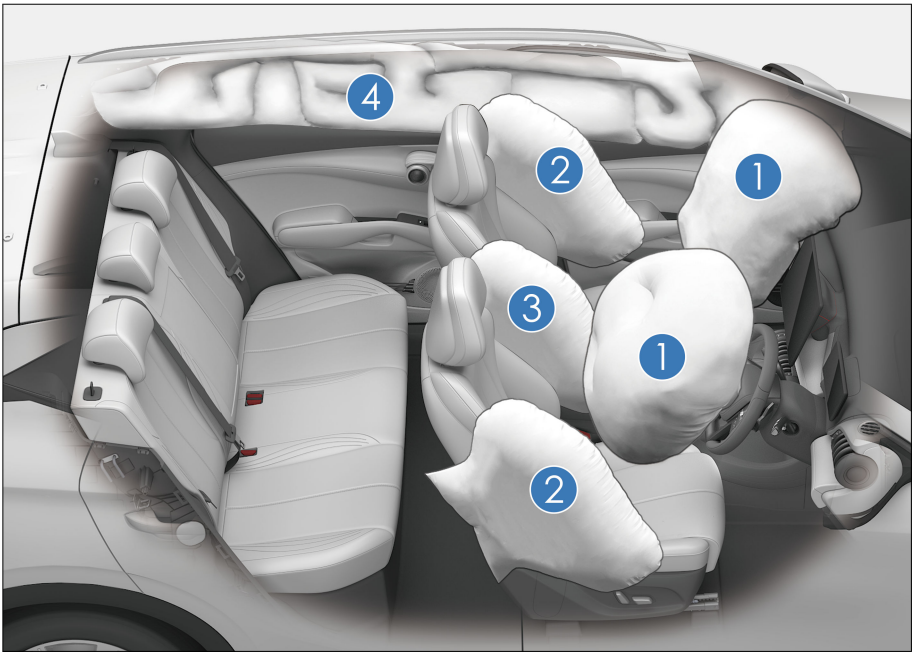
⚠ CAUTION

service provider for inspection as soon as possible. Otherwise, airbags may not work properly.

- If the vehicle is exposed to water (wet carpet or vehicle submerged in water) or damaged by water, do not start the vehicle and the low-voltage battery needs to be disconnected. Otherwise, the airbags may deploy, resulting in serious injury or death.

⚠ CAUTION

Airbag Types



① Driver and front passenger airbags

②Seat Side Airbags

③ Front far side airbag

④ Side curtain airbags

Driver and Front Passenger Airbags

- The driver airbag is mounted inside the steering wheel and the front passenger airbag is mounted inside the dashboard, both marked with "AIRBAG". When a moderate to severe impact is detected while the vehicle is powered on and the triggering conditions are met, the airbag deploys to reduce the risk of injury.

Front airbag deployment

- In moderate to severe frontal crashes, a sensor detects a sharp deceleration

and sends a signal to the ECU to trigger the front airbags.

- When there is a frontal crash, the seat belt secures the occupant's lower body and torso and the airbag cushions and protects the occupant's head and chest.
- When the severity of the impact does not reach the airbag deployment threshold, seat belts provide enough protection.
- The front airbag deflates immediately after inflation, without affecting the driver's vision and ability to operate the steering wheel or other controls.
- Airbags can inflate rapidly when triggering conditions are satisfied to further protect drivers and occupants in an accident.
- A loud noise will be heard when the airbag deploys. It will not cause injury, but it may cause tinnitus or temporary deafness which recover quickly.
- The deployment of airbags may release smoke and dust. Although these substances are non-toxic, passengers with respiratory conditions may experience temporary discomfort. If the discomfort is severe, seek medical attention immediately.

WARNING

- No accessories, such as telephone holders, cups, ashtrays, may be installed on airbag covers or within their action range. Otherwise, airbag deployment will increase the risk of injury in an accident.

Seat Side Airbags

The seat side airbags are mounted on the outside of seatbacks, marked with "AIRBAG". When a moderate to severe impact is detected while the vehicle is powered on and the triggering conditions are met, the airbag deploys to protect the chest of the occupant on the impacted side.

- Generally, only the airbag on the impacted side deploys in the event of a side impact.
- If the impact occurs on the passenger side, the airbag on the passenger side deploys even if there is no passenger in the seat.
- For optimal side airbag protection, occupants must have their seat belts fastened and sit upright against the seatback.

WARNING

- Do not wet the seatbacks, in case the side airbag system may not work properly.
- Do not cover or replace seatback covers on you own. Unsuitable seatback covers may prevent airbag deployment in a collision.
- In the event of a side impact, the airbag on the impacted side deploys when the airbag system meets its deployment conditions.
- For optimal side airbag protection, occupants must have their seat belts fastened and sit upright against the seatback.

Front far side airbag

The front far side airbag is mounted on the inner side of the driver's seatback and marked with “AIRBAG”. When a moderate to severe front or side impact is detected while the vehicle is powered on and the triggering conditions are met, the far side airbag deploys to protect the heads and shoulders of the driver and the front passenger.

WARNING

- Do not wet the seatbacks, in case the front far side airbag system may not work properly.
- Do not cover or replace seatback covers on you own. Unsuitable seatback cover replacements or covers may prevent airbag deployment in a collision.
- If the impact occurs on the front passenger's side, the far side airbag deploys even if there is no passenger in the seat.
- For optimum protection from the driver far side airbag, the occupant must have the seat belt fastened and sit in an upright position.

Side Curtain Airbags

- The left and right side curtain airbags are mounted at the junctions of the side wall and the ceiling, marked with "AIRBAG" on the B and C pillars. When a moderate to severe impact is detected while the vehicle is powered on and the triggering conditions of the side curtain airbag are met, the side curtain airbag deploys to protect the head of the occupant on the impacted side.

WARNING

- For optimum curtain airbag protection, the occupant must be buckled up and sit in an upright position.

Airbag Triggering Conditions

- Airbags may only deploy in certain crashes, depending on factors such as crash energy, crash type, impact angle, obstacle type, and vehicle speed.
- The airbag system does not always work in any accident, and generally it will not be triggered in the event of a minor frontal collision, side collision, rear collision or rollover. In this case, the driver and passengers are protected by their properly fastened seat belts.
- Determinants of airbag system triggering: Decision is made by comparing the deceleration curve, generated in the collision and obtained by the electronic control unit (ECU) and the set value. If signals, such as the deceleration curve generated and measured in the collision, are lower than the respective reference values preset in the ECU, the airbag system will not be triggered even if the vehicle may have been seriously deformed in the accident.
- The ECU of the BYD airbag system has been set up with considerations of common misuse and road conditions. However, due to the increasing changes in causes and forms of vehicle collisions, for your safety, please strictly follow this user manual, use the vehicle correctly, and avoid its misuse. Otherwise, there is no guarantee that the airbags will achieve their expected effect.

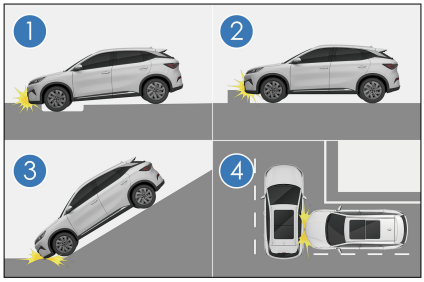
Cases When Airbags May Be Deployed

① The vehicle's nose hits the ground when crossing a deep groove.

② The vehicle hits a bump or curbstone.

③ The vehicle's nose hits the ground when going down a steep slope.

④ One side of the vehicle is hit by another vehicle.



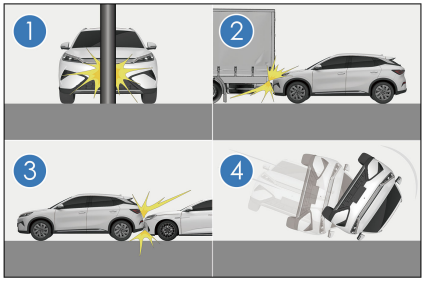
Cases When Airbags May Not Be Deployed

① The vehicle hits a concrete column, tree, or other slim objects.

② The vehicle goes under a truck or another large vehicle.

③ The tail of the vehicle is hit by another vehicle.

④ The vehicle rolls over.

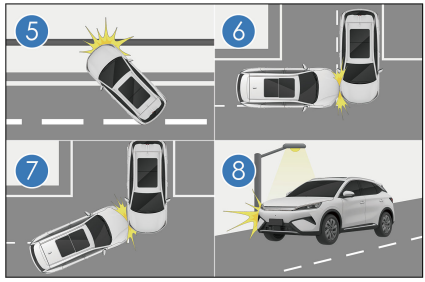


⑤ The vehicle hits a wall or a vehicle at a side other than the front side.

⑥ Parts other than the passenger compartment receive side impact.

⑦ The lateral side of the vehicle is hit diagonally.

⑧ The lateral side of the vehicle hits a columnar object.



WARNING

- Airbags are designed for specific models. Any changes to suspension, tyre size, bumpers, chassis and factory-equipped devices may adversely affect the airbag system. Users must not use any parts of the airbag system on other vehicle models; doing so may lead to failure of the airbag system.
- Drivers should maintain a distance of at least 0.820 feets(25 cm) between their chest and the steering wheel, in order for the system to provide the most effective protection.
- After the airbag system deploys, hot gas resulting from the reaction will be discharged from the airbag vent port. Avoid touching any parts and keep the correct posture of holding the steering wheel, otherwise skin burns may occur.
- Fasten your seat belt and sit properly while the vehicle is in motion. If the seat belt is not fastened, if the occupant is leaning forward or sitting improperly, airbag deployment can increase the risk of injury.
- Do not paste stickers, cover or decorate the button area or the centre cap of the steering

WARNING

wheel, the right side surface of the dashboard at and near the location of the airbag, the surface of A, B, and C-pillar trims, or the surface at and near the location of seat side airbags with any object. Clean these surfaces with a dry or damp cloth, without applying too much pressure.

- A child is not to be seated in the front passenger seat, nor are they to ride sitting on a front passenger's lap. to prevent serious injury or even casualty caused by airbag deployment.
- Side airbags and side curtain airbags deploy quickly with high impact forces. Occupants must not lean against the doors of vehicles equipped with these airbags while these vehicles are in motion. Failure to do so could result in serious injury or even death.
- Do not place any other accessories or items within the action range of side curtain airbags, including the windscreen, side door glass, A-pillar trim, ceiling, B-pillar trim, C-pillar trim and auxiliary handles. When the side curtain airbag deploys, the accessories or items will be thrown by the impact force from the side air curtain airbag, or the side curtain airbag may not deploy normally, resulting in serious injury or even death.
- When transferring vehicle ownership, make sure to pass on all of the vehicle's documents and keep the new ownership informed of airbag conditions.

WARNING

- Do not modify or replace seats or trims of the seats with side airbags. These changes may prevent normal deployment of side airbags, and thereby cause airbag system failure or unintended deployment of side airbags, resulting in serious injury or death.
- Do not disassemble or repair the trims of A, B, C pillars and the ceiling, which contain side curtain airbags. These changes can cause failure of the airbag system or accidental deployment of curtain airbags, which may cause serious injury or even death.
- Do not change any component of the airbag system, including any corresponding label. It is recommended that any operation done to the airbags be performed by a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.
- Airbags can only provide one-time accident protection. Once the airbag is triggered or damaged, the airbag system must be replaced.
- Follow safety regulations and procedures related to the scrapping of parts of the vehicle or its airbag system.
- The airbag system has strong anti-interference and anti-disturbance resistance to electromagnetic fields around it. However, to avoid accidents, do not use the vehicle in an electromagnetic environment that violates national regulations.
- The airbag system of this vehicle is designed with full consideration

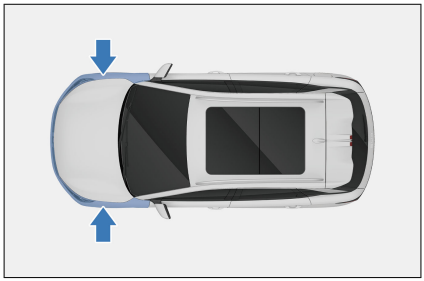
WARNING

of common misuses and road conditions. However, in order to avoid accidents, do not have the bottom of the vehicle impacted or drive roughly in harsh road conditions.

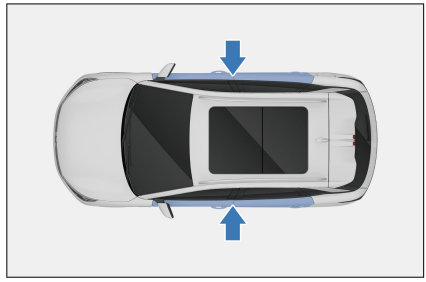
- This vehicle's airbag system has been fully verified to match the vehicle's original wiring harness system. Any wiring harness modification or alteration may cause the airbags to deploy mistakenly under normal conditions or fail to deploy in the event of a collision.

It is recommended to contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider immediately if any of the following situations occurs.

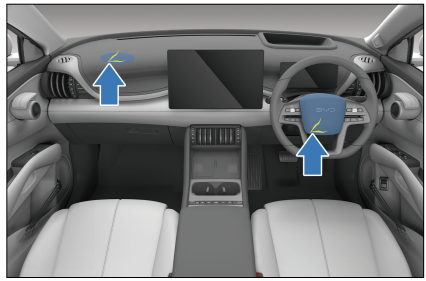
- The airbag has deployed.
- Instrument cluster airbags warning light lights up abnormally.
- An impact to the front of the vehicle in an accident is not adequate to cause the airbag to deploy (the shaded portion as shown).



- There is a collision with the vehicle door (highlighted area shown) that is not adequate to cause the airbag to deploy.



- The airbag cover (highlighted area shown) has been scratched, cracked or otherwise damaged.



- The surface of the seat with a side airbag is scratched, cracked, or damaged similarly.
- Decorative (liner) parts at A-pillar with built-in curtain airbags, roof beam and C-pillar are scratched, cracked, or damaged similarly.
- Airbags need to be removed, disassembled, installed or repaired.

Child Restraint Systems

Child Restraint Systems

- Child restraint systems provide good protection to your child in an accident. For child safety, please carefully read the instructions provided by the child restraint manufacturer and

this manual before installing a child restraint.

- Choose a suitable child restraint system for your child's age and stature.

Recommended child restraint systems:

Weight Group	Child Weight	Child Restraint Systems	Type
Group 0	less than 22 lb (10 kg)	-	-
Group 0+	less than 28 lb (13 kg)	Maxi Cosi Pebble 360	Universal class
Group 1	19 to 39 lb (9 to 18 kg)	Britax Römer KING PRO	Universal class
Group 2	33 to 55 lb (15 to 25 kg)	Britax Römer KIDFIX i-SIZE	Universal class Semi-universal class
Group 3	48 to 79 lb (22 to 36 kg)	Britax Römer KIDFIX i-SIZE	Universal class Semi-universal class

① Group 0+

② Group I

③ Group II /III

- Children must be secured in a suitable child restraint in a comfortable and safe way when travelling in the vehicle. Make sure that the child restraint is positioned, mounted, and used correctly.
- A child who cannot use a protection device for size reason must sit in the rear outboard seat and have the seat belt fastened properly or use the booster seat secured to the lower anchorages in accoradance with the installatin instructions provided by the child restraint manufacturer.

WARNING

- Never carry a child on your lap in a vehicle journey.
- An appropriate child restraint system must be used for your child.
- Please follow the instructions provided with the child restraint system and in this manual to make sure the child restraint is properly installed in the vehicle.
- After the child restraint is dismounted from the seat, store it safely in your boot.

WARNING

- Failure to follow the instruction provided by the child restraint manufacturer and this manual may cause injuries and even death to your child in an accident.

- Secure the top tether when installing the child restraint system.

Installing Child Restraint Systems

Rear outboard seating positions

- The rear outboard seats are equipped with ISOFIX/i-Size anchorages.
- As shown in the illustration, the label indicating the anchoring position is attached to the seat.

- The rear outboard seats are equipped with anchorage on the back.

Installing a child restraint

1. Check the position of the special anchorage and install the child restraint on the seat.

REMINDER

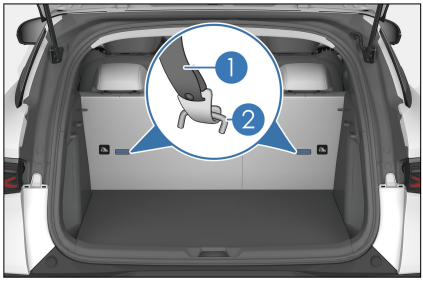
- The anchorages are located in the gap between the seat cushion and the seatback.

- When any child restraint system is installed, except for a booster seat without a back, it is advised that the adjustable head support is removed, and stowed safely.
- When a booster seat without a back is installed, adjust the head support to a proper position.
- When the seat position does not have any child restraint system or booster seat installed, install the head support and adjust it to a proper position.

2.Engage the hook tightly to the anchorage at the back of the seatback, and tighten the top tether so that it is fastened.

① Top tether

② Anchorage



CAUTION

- Before installing the child restraint top tether, remove the cargo cover.
- After the seat head support is removed, keep it in the boot.
- BYD recommends installing the child restraint system using the International Standards Organisation Fix (ISOFIX)anchorages of the vehicle.
- If the driver seat obstructs or interferes with the correct installation of the child restraint system, install the child restraint system on the other rear outboard seat.

Child restraint installed on front passenger seat*

- The switch is located on the passenger side of the dashboard and is accessible when the passenger's door is open.
- When using a rear-facing child restraint, switch off the front passenger seat airbag by the PAB switch.
- See ***P76*** for details.
- Check the position of the special anchorage and install the child restraint on the seat.

WARNING

- Never use a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat if the airbag is activated.

- ISOFIX/i-Size anchorage points are available for the front passenger seat and the label indicating an anchorage point location is attached to the seatback above the relevant anchorage
- An anchorage is provided for child restraint installation at the back of the front passenger seat.

Always follow the instructions below when using a child restraint on the front passenger seat:

- Never install a rear-facing child restraint on the front passenger seat if the passenger airbag is activated. The airbag must be activated immediately after the rearward-facing child restraint system is dismounted from the front passenger seat
- If necessary, adjust the front passenger seat backwards so that there is no contact between the child and vehicle interior.
- If necessary, the front passenger seatback can be adjusted so that it has secure contact with the child restraint system.
- For child restraint systems with the guide fitting of belt attached to the child seat headrest, ensure that the guide fitting is positioned forward or in line with the seat belt upper anchorage on the vehicle's B-pillar.
- When a forward-facing child restraint system is used on the front passenger seat, ensure that the seat is positioned fully rearward away from the active airbag.
- Ensure that the seat belt passes through the guide fitting without

kinking and is not bent over the edge of the guide fitting.

WARNING

- When the front passenger airbag is disabled, it is not allowed to seat in the front seat(including adults and children).
- When using a child restraint system always ensure: the anchorages are not obstructed; the seat belt is in the correct position; and the child restraint system is securely installed.

CAUTION

- Extension straps may be required to connect the top tether to the anchorage, if the top tether length is insufficient.

- Before installing an R3 size child restraint system, make sure that the front passenger seat is adjusted to the rearmost position.
- Where applicable to use a top tether strap with the child restraint system, ensure the strap is routed through the hole in the head support before attaching and tensioning the strap to the anchorage point at the base of the seat.

- For details about installing the child restraint system on the front passenger seat, see the preceding description.

Securing a child restraint with the seat belt*

- Only use child seats that are recommended by BYD, are universally approved, or are semi-universal and where the vehicle model is included on the child restraint manufacturer's vehicle list.
- Installation options are shown in the table below.

Group		Child Weight	Front Passenger Seat*		Rear Seats
			Front passenger front airbag ON	Front passenger front airbag OFF	
Group 0		Up to 10 kg	X	U	U
Group 0+		Up to 13 kg	X	U	U
Group 1	Rear-facing	9~18 kg	X	U	U
	Front-facing	9~18 kg	U	X	U
Group 2		15~25 kg	U	X	U
Group 3		22-36 kg	U	X	U

Note: Table definitions:

U: universal

X: X: seat position not suitable for installing a child restraint for this weight group

- The identification mark of ISOFIX or i-Size anchorage points is specified by the corresponding country/region.
- Suitability of ISOFIX seating positions for ISOFIX child restraint systems.

ISOFIX and i-Size quick installation guide*

Group	Child Seat Orientation	Size class/ ISOFIX class	Front Passenger Seat*		Rear Outboard Seat	Rear Middle Seat
			Front passenger front airbag ON	Front passenger front airbag OFF		
Group 0: Up to 10 kg	Rear-facing	E/R1	X	IL-SU	IL-SU	X
Group 0+: Up to 13 kg	Rear-facing	E/R1 D/R2 C/R3	X	IL-SU	IL-SU	X
Group 1: 9~18 kg	Rear-facing	D/R2 C/R3	X	IL-SU	IL-SU	X
	Front-facing	B/F2X B1/F2X A/F3	IL-SU, IUF	X	IL-SU, IUF	X
Group 2: 15~25 kg	Front-facing	-	IL-SU	X	IL-SU	X
Group 3: 22-36 kg	Front-facing	-	IL-SU	X	IL-SU	X
i-Size child restraint system	Rear-facing	–/R2	X	i-U	i-U	X
	Front-facing	–/B2, F2X	i-U	X	i-U	X
Booster seat	Front-facing	–/B2, B3	i-B	X	i-B	X

Size class:

- The size class shown corresponds to the applicable weight range of the child restraint.

- The size class of the child restraint applicable to the universal group or semi-universal group is indicated on the ECE approval label.
- The child restraint is attached with a size description.

X:

- The seat is not suitable for installing an ISOFIX or i-Size child restraint.

IL-SU:

- The seat is suitable for installing a semi-universal ISOFIX child restraint.
- Please note the list of applicable models provided by the child restraint manufacturer.

IUF:

- The seat is suitable for installing a universal ISOFIX child restraint.

i-U:

- The seat is suitable for installing a universal front-facing or rear-facing i-Size child restraintt.

i-UF:

- The seat is suitable for installing a universal front-facing i-Size child restraint.

i-B:

- The seat is suitable for installing a front-facing ISOFIX booster cushion of Groups 2/3 and a front-facing i-Size child restraint for children with a height of 39-59 in(100-150 cm).

Anti-theft Alarm System

Anti-theft Alarm System

Arming the system

1. Switch the ignition off.
2. All occupants get off the vehicle.
3. Lock all doors. Lock all doors and the anti-theft alarm system will arm automatically after 8 seconds.

Triggering the alarm

- The system, when armed, will raise an alarm with flashing turn signals in any of the following situations:
  - Any door, boot, or bonnet is opened without using the keyless access function of the smart key.
  - Use the mechanical key to unlock the vehicle.

Disarming the system

- Anti-theft alarm can be stopped by:
  - Unlocking the door or the boot with a valid smart key/NFC key/App.
  - Using the microswitch to unlock the door by carrying a valid smart key.
  - Starting the vehicle remotely with a valid smart key.
  - Pressing the START/STOP button inside the vehicle while carrying a valid smart key.

WARNING

- You must not repair, replace, or modify the components of the theft deterrent system because such modifications may cause the

WARNING

system to malfunction or affect the terms of the insurance.

- If the anti-theft system fails, please contact BYD authorised service shop for maintenance.

Data Collection and Processing

Data Collection and Processing

- This section provides you with some important information on how personal data is collected and processed when you use a BYD vehicle.
- For a more detailed overview on data processing, data protection and data subject rights, please refer to the current version of the privacy policy available in the infotainment system (infotainment touchscreen→Application center →Settings → System → Privacy Policy).
- This vehicle is equipped with Event Data Recorder (EDR)EDR mainly records data in the event of a crash or near-crash (for example, airbag deployment or hitting on a roadside obstacle) to help comprehend the vehicle system operation, such as:
  - Vehicle velocity
  - Tyre pressure condition.
  - Adaptive cruise control (ACC) system status
  - Whether the seat belt is fastened.
- The vehicle records EDR data only when there is a crash or when a near-crash event reaches a certain extent. The EDR does not record any data during the normal driving of the vehicle.
  - The data recorded by the EDR system provides an understanding of the state of the vehicle's safety-related systems when an accident occurs, so that relevant parties can analyse the accident.
  - The EDR data needs to be accessed and read by special equipment. BYD discloses your personal data to third parties only if this is legally permissible or you have consented to it. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, third-party agencies with professional equipment (such as government agencies) can also read the EDR data if they have access to the vehicle EDR and equipment (for example, they can read the data of SRS control unit to clarify the accident).

Vehicle Data Processing

- Data is collected when the vehicle is used, such as data collected or transmitted by vehicle sensors or control units, which is necessary for the safe functioning of your vehicle.
- In some cases, the data is used to support driving (driver assistance systems) or to enable a specific comfort or infotainment function.
- Personal data that is collected and processed mainly include in-vehicle data, remote-services-related data, and other data, as further specified below.

In-vehicle data

Operation data

- When the vehicle is used, various vehicle status data (e.g., speed, battery level, and braking system) or environment (e.g., distance sensors and temperature) data is collected and processed.
- This data is not usually stored, but there are control units, sensors or other components installed in the vehicle that record such data, for example, to record maintenance requirements, error messages, or other information.
- The in-vehicle data will only be stored in the equipment in the vehicle but can be read out via the legally required OBD ("On Board Diagnostics") interface, for example, by BYD authorised dealer or service provider or other third parties.
- In case this access takes place during vehicle maintenance, the information can also be transmitted to BYD engineers for quality assurance, product defect reports, or customer claim verification.

Remote-services-related data

Remote monitoring services

- The vehicle has remote monitoring services.
- These include remote monitoring services such as remote diagnosis and over-the-air (OTA) updates and upgrades for security and safety purposes (subject to owner's approval).
- These monitoring services serve the following purposes: service provision (remote support/diagnostics), product development, and security/public safety.
- Depending on the country and setup, various vehicle information can be transmitted to BYD's data centre in corresponding market for the above purposes, including vehicle location information, vehicle status, such as energy consumption, vehicle speed, gear position, power mode, ESC status, steering system status, battery status, powertrain status, and overall vehicle performance status.

Other

Infotainment system

- Depending on vehicle configuration, data can be added to the infotainment system by the users themselves, such as media data for playing video on the infotainment system, address data for use in the navigation system, or data for use in online services.
- Depending on vehicle configuration, individual settings in and on the vehicle can also be entered.
- Data stored in the vehicle can be deleted at any time.
- BYD has no control over data transferred to third parties (from the use of third party content, in particular as part of online services).

Integration of mobile devices

- Depending on vehicle configurations, mobile devices can be connected and controlled through the vehicle's infotainment system.
- It may be necessary that the device's screen or audio is displayed/played through the infotainment system or transmitted to it.
- Additional data like positioning or vehicle information can be transmitted through applications for use in certain navigation systems, communication, or other third-party services.
- The specific type of data processing depends on the respective function and is controlled by the user or third

parties such as the provider of the devices or corresponding services.

Internet access and connected services

- Depending on vehicle configurations, the Internet can be accessed for certain functions or BYD services through the vehicle's infotainment system network devices.
- BYD is not liable for any such services provided by any other party.
- In such cases, please obtain information about the use of data from the provider of the respective online service.

Camera image recording/surrounding area monitoring

- Your vehicle is equipped with a number of cameras/sensors.
- The reason for this is that some vehicle functionalities require the vehicle's path to be detected and assessed which is done by cameras that detect objects in the vehicle's surroundings (e.g., obstacles).
- The images are transmitted to the respective control module for further analytics required to operate the systems.
- Some images are just processed on a volatile basis (RAM), others may be stored, depending on vehicle equipment.
- The vehicle may be equipped with an outward-facing camera (OFC) that can be used to take footage of the surrounding (dashcam).
- The vehicle may also be equipped with an inward-facing camera (IFC), which can be used to take footage inside the vehicle.
- Both OFC and IFC footage is stored.
- You are responsible to check the laws of your residence if you turn the camera on.
- Please be aware of corresponding laws before turning on your OFC or IFC (for instance, in some countries consent is required for the use of IFC, and in others OFC is strictly restricted to dashcam purposes).
- For more camera details, see sections "Driving Recorder" and "Panoramic View System" in this manual.

Permanent Vehicle Transfer to Third Parties

- In case of a permanent vehicle transfer, please note that any personalisation/user settings made via the infotainment system (including the address list and the navigation system) can be accessed by the new owner.

Disclosure of Personal Data to Authorities

- BYD will not discloses your personal data to third parties unless this is legally permissible or you have consented to it.
- However, subject to applicable laws, government agencies may be authorised to read out data from vehicles (for example, data can be read from the airbag control unit to clarify an accident).
- If required by law, BYD may also be obliged to disclose data upon request to governmental authorities in your country, such as in the investigation of a criminal offence.

Your Data Protection Rights

- BYD has staunch respect for its customer's privacy, and strictly complies with all data protection

laws, in particular the General Data Protection Regulation (GDPR) and applicable local laws.

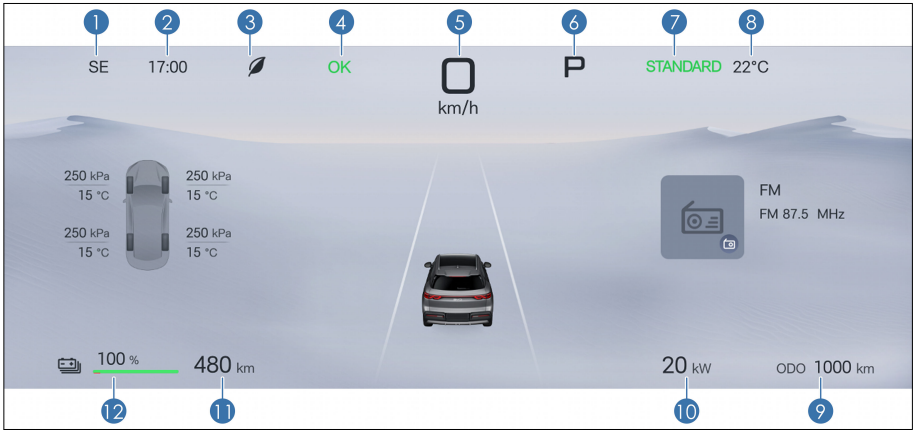
- According to these laws, owners have specific rights when their personal data is processed:
  - Data subjects have the right of information and access, to rectification, erasure of personal data ("right to be forgotten") and the right to object to the processing of personal data or to restrict it (or to withdraw consent given earlier, as well as the right to data portability).
- These rights may be limited in some cases. For example, if we can show that we have a legal obligation to process your data, or if providing the information to you would disclose personal data about another person, or if we are legally prevented from disclosing that information.
- In some cases, this may mean that we can retain the data even if you withdraw your consent.
- For more information on data processing, data protection, and any rights you may have, please visit the latest version of the Privacy Policy available at the infotainment system.

02 INSTRUMENT CLUSTER

Instrument Cluster.....34

Instrument Cluster

Instrument Cluster View

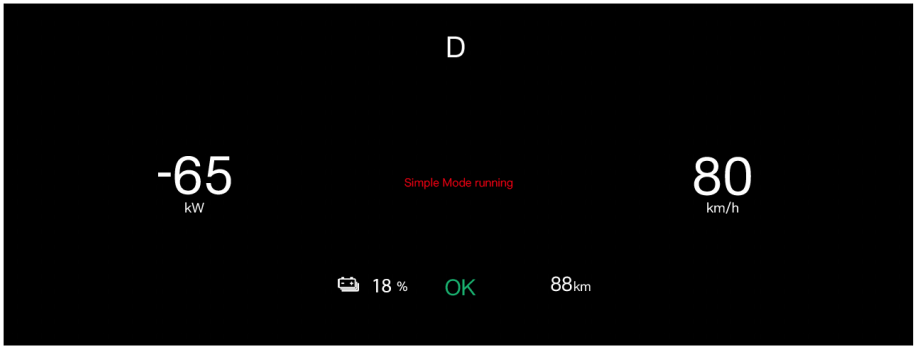


1	Direction	7	Regenerative braking
2	Time	8	Outside temperature
3	Driving Mode	9	Total mileage
4	OK indicator	10	Power meter
5	Speedometer	11	Remaining driving range
6	Gear status	12	State of charge (SOC)

Instrument cluster Settings

- The user can enter the instrument settings by accessing on the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → Audio Display → Instrument to adjust the instrument brightness and mileage information
- Mileage information can be switched between total mileage, mileage one and mileage two.
- The battery gauge can display either remaining mileage or battery charge level.

Simplified mode*



REMINDER

- During occasional communication delays in the instrument cluster system, the instrument cluster may automatically switch to simple mode for safe driving. In this mode, the instrument cluster continues to display driving-related information without affecting vehicle travel. After the system becomes normal, the instrument cluster should automatically exit from the simple mode. If it does not, try the following:
  - Press and hold the power button on the infotainment touchscreen to restart the infotainment system and the instrument cluster information display system.
  - While safety is ensured, restart the vehicle.
- If the instrument cluster remains in simple mode after those actions have been taken, promptly contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for inspection.
- The image of the instrument cluster view is for reference only and is subject to actual factory configuration.

Instrument Cluster Indicators

Indicators/Warning Lights

	Turn signal indicator		Position light indicator
OK	OK indicator	ECO	ECO indicator
SPORT	SPORT indicator	SET	Regular cruise control indicator*

	Discharge indicator		AVH indicator
	HDC indicator*		Regular cruise control main indicator*
	ACC speed indicator*		ACC status indicator*
	Lane keeping indicator*		HMA indicator*
	ICC indicator*		ELKA status indicator*
	Towing mode indicator*		High beam indicator
	BSD indicator*		Driver monitoring assistance system fault warning light*
	Rear fog light indicator		AVAS fault indicator*
	AEB warning light*		Smart key warning light
	Tire pressure fault warning light		Main alarm indicator
	ESC OFF warning light		ESC fault warning light
	ABS fault warning light		Driving power limit warning light
	Headlight fault warning light		ACC fault warning light*

	High-voltage battery low SOC warning light		Snow mode indicator
	Speed limit release indicator*		AVH standby indicator (grey)
	ACC standby indicator (gray)*		Coolant overheating indicator
	Steering system fault warning light		TSR indicator*
	PCW warning light (red)		Powertrain fault warning light
	Seat belt reminder indicator		Airbag fault warning light
	EPB indicator		Parking system fault warning light
	Low-voltage power system fault warning light		High-voltage battery charging connection indicator
	High-voltage battery fault warning light		High-voltage battery overheating warning light

Warning Lights/Indicators Description

Smart key warning light

- If the key is not in the vehicle when you press the START/STOP button, this warning light comes on for a few seconds, a beep sounds, and the message "No key detected, please confirm if the key is in the vehicle" is displayed on the instrument cluster.
- If you press the START/STOP button while an electronic smart key matching the model is in the vehicle, this warning light does not light up. The vehicle can now be powered on.
- If the warning light flashes after you press the START/STOP button, it indicates low battery of the key.
- If the key is not in the vehicle, the instrument cluster prompts "No key detected, please confirm if the key is in the vehicle".

Antilock Braking System (ABS)fault warning light

- This warning light comes on when the ignition is on. If the anti-lock braking system (ABS) is working properly, the light goes out in a few seconds. Thereafter, if the system fails, the light lights up again until the fault is cleared.
- When the ABS fault warning light is on (with the parking brake system fault warning light off), the braking system continues to operate whereas the ABS does not.
- When the ABS fault warning light is on (with the parking brake system fault warning light off), since the ABS system does not operate, the wheels will be locked in case of emergency braking or braking on a slippery road.
- If any of the following cases occurs, it means there is a fault in components monitored by the warning light system. In that case, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for vehicle inspection as soon as possible.
  - This warning light does not come on or is steady on when the ignition is on.
  - This warning light is steady on while driving.

REMINDER

- A warning light that lights up briefly during operation does not indicate a problem.
- If the ABS fault warning light is still on while the parking brake system fault warning light is on, immediately park the vehicle in a safe place. It is recommended to contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider. In this case, if brakes are applied, the ABS will not work and the vehicle will become extremely unstable.
- If both the ABS indicator and the braking system indicator come on and the electronic parking brake (EPB) is fully released, the braking force distribution system of front and rear wheels has also failed.

Tyre pressure fault warning light

- This warning light comes on when the ignition is on. It turns off in a few seconds if the tyre pressure monitoring system is working properly. If the system fails, this warning light turns on again.
- When the tyre pressure fault warning light comes on or flashes, the message "Please check TPMS" is displayed on the instrument cluster, and the tyre pressure is displayed as "---", it indicates that the tyre pressure system is faulty.
- When the tyre pressure value displays "No Signal", it indicates that the tyre pressure signal at this location of the vehicle may be disturbed or the tyre pressure monitoring module is damaged.
- When the tyre pressure fault warning light is solid on and one or more values turn yellow on the tyre pressure screen on the instrument cluster, the corresponding tyre is in under-pressure condition. When the temperature value of one or more tyres turns yellow, it indicates that the tyre temperature is too high.

In the event of any of the situations above, it is recommended to contact a

BYD authorised dealer or service provider for inspection as soon as possible.

ESC fault warning light

- This warning light comes on when the ignition is on. If electronic stability control (ESC) functions properly, the light goes out in a few seconds. If the system fails, this warning light turns on again until the system fault is cleared.
- If the ESC warning light flashes temporarily while the vehicle is in motion, it indicates the ESC system is working.
- When the ESC warning light turns on (with the ABS fault warning light and the parking system fault warning light off), the ESC fails, but the ABS and the braking system continue to operate normally.
- When the ESC warning light turns on (with the ABS fault warning light and the parking system fault warning light off), the ESC system does not work. This means the vehicle is extremely unstable at sharp turns or when the driver steers away from obstacles ahead.
- If any of the following cases occurs, it means there is a fault in components monitored by the warning light system. In that case, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for vehicle inspection as soon as possible.
  - This warning light remains off (self-check not performed) after the vehicle is powered on.
  - This warning light is steady on while driving.

REMINDER

- A warning light that lights up briefly during operation does not indicate a problem.
- If the ESC warning light remains on while the warning lights for the ABS and the braking system are on, immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider. This is because braking at this time can render the vehicle extremely unstable, and the anti-lock braking system does not work at all.

ESC OFF warning light

- When the ESC OFF switch is pressed, this warning light should remain steady on and the ESC system will not operate. When the ESC OFF switch is pressed again, this warning light should turn off and the ESC system returns to normal.

REMINDER

- While the ESC OFF warning light is on, the driver must stay alert and keep driving at a lower speed when making a sharp turn and when avoiding an obstacle which appears suddenly, because braking at this time can render the vehicle unstable, as the ESC system is switched OFF.

Driving power limit warning light

When the power of the vehicle is limited, this warning light will come on. In this case, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider in time.

Headlight fault warning light

- When the warning light is yellow, it indicates the headlight is faulty, and it is recommended to bring the vehicle to a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for inspection.

Main alarm indicator

- If this indicator goes on, check the fault prompt or warning on the instrument cluster.

Seat belt reminder

- When the ignition is on, if any occupant on the front seats or rear seats* has not buckled up, the unfastened seat belt indicators* light up. It remains on until the seat belt is fastened.

Airbag fault warning light

- With the ignition switched on, this warning light turns on and then goes off in a few seconds if the airbag system is working properly. This warning light system is used to monitor the airbag ECU, collision sensors, inflation devices, indicators, connections, and power supply.
- If any of the following cases occurs, it means there is a fault in components monitored by the warning light system. In that case, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for vehicle inspection as soon as possible.
  - When the ignition is switched on, this warning light remains off or is solid on after the ignition is switched on.
  - This warning light turns on during driving.

Parking break system fault warning light

When the brake fluid level is low and the braking system is faulty, this warning light lights up. If any of the following conditions occurs, immediately park the vehicle in a safe place. It is recommended to contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.

- This warning light comes on when the ignition is switched on and the brake fluid level is low.

REMINDER

- When the brake fluid level is low, park the vehicle because it is dangerous to continue driving.

- This warning light is solid on although after starting the vehicle, the brake fluid level and EPB system operation are normal (the EPB is engaged and released normally, and the message "Please check the EPB" is not displayed).
- Fault warning lights for parking brake and ABS come on simultaneously.

REMINDER

- Momentary illumination of this warning light during operation does not indicate a problem.

Steering system fault warning light

- When the steering system is faulty, this warning light is steady on. It is recommended to bring the vehicle to a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for inspection.

REMINDER

- The steering system features an electric motor to reduce the force required to turn the steering wheel.
- When turning the steering wheel, a hum may be heard from the running motor. This does not indicate that the motor is faulty.
- Do not turn the steering wheel to its limit position for more than five seconds, otherwise the activation of temperature protection will result in heavy steering or damage the steering system.

- If you have turned the steering wheel frequently with the vehicle staying put for a long time, the steering wheel may become difficult to turn even if the warning light does not turn on. This is not a fault.
  - To prevent steering system overheating, the power assist effect will be reduced if the steering wheel has been frequently turned with the vehicle staying put for a long time. As a result, the steering wheel become difficult to turn. In this case, reduce steering frequency or power off the vehicle. The system will recover within 10 minutes.

WARNING

- If the steering system fault warning light goes on, immediately park the vehicle safely, and contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.

Low-voltage power system fault warning light

- This light is used to warn about the operating state of the DC module and the low-voltage battery module when the vehicle is not being charged or discharging.
- In charging state, this warning light indicates failure of the charging system.
- If this warning light turns on while the vehicle is in motion, it indicates that there is a problem with the DC system or the low-voltage power system. In this case, turn off the A/C and fans, immediately park the vehicle safely, and contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.

Powertrain fault warning light

- If the powertrain fails, this warning light turns on.
- If any of the following cases occurs, it means there is a fault in components monitored by the warning light system. In that case, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for vehicle inspection as soon as possible.
  - This warning light is steady on when the ignition is switched on.
  - This warning light turns on during driving.

CAUTION

- Try not to drive the vehicle when the warning light is on. Contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider to check the problem as soon as possible.

High-voltage battery overheating warning light

- If this indicator is on, it indicates that the high-voltage battery temperature

is too high and the vehicle must be stopped to cool down. When the warning light flashes, it is recommended to immediately stop the vehicle safely and leave the vehicle as soon as possible.

- The high-voltage battery may overheat under the following operating conditions:
  - Driving up a slope for a long time in hot weather
  - Long period of stop-and-go traffic condition, frequent rapid acceleration, frequent hard braking, or vehicle running for a long time without pause.

High-voltage battery fault warning light

- This warning light comes on when the ignition is switched on. If the high-voltage battery system is working properly, this warning light will turn off in a few seconds. If this light lights up again thereafter, it indicates a system failure. It is recommended to contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for inspection as soon as possible.
- If any of the following cases occurs, it means that there are faults in the components monitored by the warning light system. In such case, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for vehicle inspection as soon as possible.
  - This warning light is steady on when the ignition is on.
  - This warning light is steady on or occasionally turns on while driving.

Other Instrument Cluster Fault Prompts

The instrument cluster may display the following fault alerts or warnings. Handle them according to the recommended methods.

Symbol	Error message	Response
	Please check the OBC system	The on-board charging system is faulty. Check the charging connection, and reconnect the charging equipment. If the fault persists, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.
	Vehicle network error, please pull over safely and contact BYD service	The vehicle may be disconnected from the data network. In this case, park the vehicle immediately, and contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.
	Please check the headlight	The headlight is faulty. In this case, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.
	Please check the PCW system*	The PCW system is faulty. In this case, park the vehicle, and contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.

Symbol	Error message	Response
	The AEB function is limited*	The AEB system is faulty. In this case, park the vehicle, and contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.
	Please check the BSD system*	The BSD system for lane change is faulty. In this case, park the vehicle, and contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.
	The BSD function is limited*	The BSD function is limited. In this case, park the vehicle, and contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.
	Please check the gear	The shifter controller is faulty. In this case, park the vehicle immediately, and contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.
	Please check the multi-purpose camera*	The multi-purpose camera is faulty. In this case, park the vehicle, and contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.
	The function of the multi-purpose camera is limited*	The function of the multi-purpose camera is limited. In this case, park the vehicle, and contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.
	Intelligent-camera is not available due to poor condition*	The intelligent-camera is unavailable. In this case, park the vehicle, and contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.
	Please check the ICC or LKS*	The intelligent cruise control (ICC) or lane keeping system (LKS) is faulty. In this case, park the vehicle, and contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.
	ICC or LKS function limited*	The ICC or LKS function is limited. In this case, park the vehicle, and contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.

03 CONTROLLER OPERATION

Doors and Keys..... 46
Seat..... 59
Steering Wheel..... 63
Wipers..... 66
Rearview Mirrors..... 68
Switches..... 70

Doors and Keys

Key Overview

The vehicle is equipped with keys, including electronic smart key, mechanical key (installed in the electronic smart key), bluetooth digital key* and NFC key*.

Electronic Smart Key

Press the front door microswitch, while carrying the smart key, to unlock or lock all doors, or press smart key buttons to lock/unlock doors, unlock the boot, or start the vehicle remotely.

① Lock button

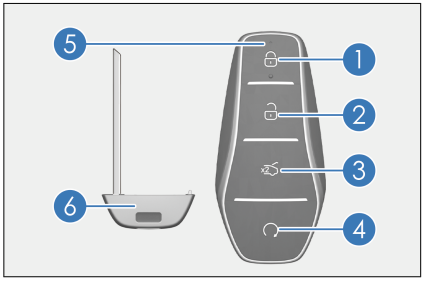
② Unlock button

③ Boot release button

④ Start/Stop button

⑤ Indicator

⑥ Mechanical Key



WARNING

⚠ Button battery safety alert:

- The button (coin) battery in the smart key is hazardous and both new and used batteries are to be kept away from children at all times.

WARNING

- If swallowed or placed inside any part of the body, a lithium button battery can cause severe or fatal injuries in two hours or less.
- Medical attention should be sought immediately if it is suspected the button battery has been swallowed or placed inside any part of the body.

CAUTION

- The smart key is an electronic component. Observe the following instructions to prevent damage to the key:
  - Do not place the smart key in a position exposed to high temperature, such as on the dashboard in the summer sun.
  - Do not disassemble the smart key.
  - Do not let the smart key hit other objects or fall down.
  - Do not immerse the key in water or clean it in the ultrasonic scrubber.
  - Do not place smart keys with devices that emit electromagnetic waves, such as the mobile phone.
  - Do not attach to the smart key any objects (such as a metal seal) capable of cutting off electromagnetic wave signals.
  - You can register a spare key for the same vehicle. In this case, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider immediately.
- If the electronic smart key cannot operate the door within the

CAUTION

normal distance, or the key indicator light is dim or off:

- Check for nearby radio stations or airport radio transmitters that interfere with the normal operation of electronic smart keys.
- The smart key battery may be exhausted. Check the battery inside the electronic smart key. It is recommended to contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for battery change.

- If you lose your smart key, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider as soon as possible to reduce the risk of vehicle theft or accidents.
- Do not change the transmission frequency arbitrarily, increase the transmission power (including additional transmission frequency amplifier), or arbitrarily connect the external detection antenna or switch to other transmitting detection antennas.
- The use of the smart key must not cause harmful interference to legal radio communication services. Once interference is found, stop using the key immediately and take measures to eliminate the interference before continuing to use.
- The use of micropower radio equipment must endure the interference of various radio services or the radiation interference of industrial, scientific, and medical equipment.

CAUTION

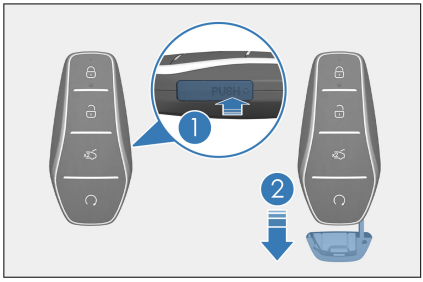
- Do not use it near airplanes or airports.
- People implanted with pacemakers or defibrillators should stay away from the detection antennas of intelligent entry and start systems, as electromagnetic waves can affect the normal use of such devices. In addition to people implanted with pacemakers or defibrillators, those who use other electronic medical devices should also consult the manufacturer on the use of such devices under the influence of electromagnetic waves. Electromagnetic waves may bring unknown consequences to the use of such medical devices.
- When leaving the vehicle, always carry your key and lock the vehicle. Never leave anyone (especially children) alone in the vehicle.

Mechanical Key

Use the mechanical key (inside the smart key) to lock or unlock the driver's door. Insert the mechanical key back into the smart key when it is not in use.

Taking out the mechanical key

- Press the "PUSH" button ① on the smart key, and take out the mechanical key in the direction indicated by ②.



Reinstall the mechanical key

- Press the "PUSH" button and insert the mechanical key back into the smart key when it is not in use.

Bluetooth Digital Key*

Mobile Phone Bluetooth Digital Key*

Use the Bluetooth digital key to control the vehicle through a close-range Bluetooth connection, including locking/unlocking the doors and Starting the Vehicle.

- Download and install the latest BYD App in the app market. The function of Bluetooth digital key can be found in the app.
- To set up the Bluetooth Digital Key, ensure the vehicle is nearby and follow the steps below:

  1. Open the BYD app.
  2. Activate mobile Bluetooth.
  3. Select the associated vehicle.
  4. To activate the Bluetooth Key, set up Bluetooth Digital Key on the Vehicle Page.

- Turn on the Bluetooth on your phone, approach the vehicle, and open the BYD App for automatic Bluetooth digital key connection. You can also connect it manually. The key is effective after Bluetooth is connected.
- The specific functions supported by the key are subject to the vehicle configuration. The Bluetooth Key function uses wireless communication to send control signals to the vehicle, without needing mobile network support.
- In some countries or regions, according to relevant regulations, when a user starts the vehicle, the vehicle will detect the position of the Bluetooth digital key. The vehicle can be started only when it detects that the key is within a certain range of it to ensure the vehicle property safety.
  - In such cases, after unlocking the vehicle using the Bluetooth Digital Key, the engine ignition will not be activated. To start the vehicle, you must either carry the physical key or tap Start button in the BYD App.
  - For best performance, when starting the vehicle, approach the driver’s side and tap Start in the BYD App.
- If you unpair the vehicle or deactivate your BYD Cloud, the Bluetooth Digital Key will be removed.

CAUTION

- When activating the Bluetooth key, ensure that the vehicle network signal is good. If the activation fails, try to move the vehicle to a place with good network and activate the key again in App.
- After the vehicle is unlocked with a Bluetooth digital key, the doors may be locked automatically if there is no operation in a short time.
- When the key connection or operation fails for many times,

CAUTION

you can turn the Bluetooth off and then on, or restart the application.

- Limited by the vehicle environment and mobile phone performance, the effective distance of the key will be reduced in case of dense vehicles.
- Switch on the Bluetooth and positioning of your phone before using the key, and contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider if a problem occurs.
- Mobile Phone Bluetooth Digital Key Compatibility: Supported OS Versions: iOS 16.0+ and Android 6.0+.

NFC Key Card

The NFC key card, based on the near field communication method, can be used to unlock/lock and start the vehicle.

- Place the NFC key at the mark on the driver's side mirror to unlock/lock all the doors.

CAUTION

- NFC key card is an electronic product. The following instructions must be observed to prevent function failure of or damage to the card:
  - Do not place the NFC card in the charging area when the wireless charger is on.
  - Do not attach any objects (such as a metal seal, and metal phone back shell) which cut off electromagnetic wave signals when using the card.
  - Do not place the NFC card in a position exposed to high

CAUTION

temperature, such as on the dashboard.

- Do not bend the card with force.
- Do not place the card with other hard objects.

- NFC key cards use near-field communication technology, requiring a detection distance of less than 0.066 feets(2 cm). Hold your NFC card close to the side mirror for 1-2 seconds.
- The NFC smart card is a key configured for the vehicle based on the near field communication method. In order to ensure vehicle safety, handle it with care. If it is lost, going to BYD authorised dealer or service provider for blocking of the lost card and re-configuration is recommended.

NFC Digital Key

The NFC digital key is a digital key solution provided by BYD. You can register smartphones or wearable devices as vehicle keys to unlock, lock, and start the vehicle.

- Before activating the NFC digital key, observe the following conditions:
  - You have registered BYD Cloud Service for the vehicle.
  - The vehicle supports NFC digital key.
  - Your smartphone or wearable device supports BYD NFC digital key (contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for device compatibility).

Activating the NFC digital key on smartphones

Before activating, start the vehicle and shift into Park with a valid smart key.

- Via the BYD app:
  - Please go to the mobile APP store to download BYD APP, and complete registration and login. Navigate to ‘Digital Key’ and follow the instructions to activate the key.

Activating the NFC digital key on wearable devices

Supported wearable devices include Apple Watch (consult a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for other supported wearable devices), and there are two ways for activating:

- Synchronise the key from iPhone to Apple Watch:
  - After successful key activation on iPhone, the device prompts to add the NFC digital key to a paired Apple Watch which is nearby and unlocked. Follow the prompts to complete activation.
- Via Watch App:
  - If the iPhone NFC key is active but not synced to Apple Watch, the method can be applied. Open the Watch on the iPhone, select "Wallet", find the corresponding key and tap "Add" to activate the key according to the instructions.

Using the NFC digital key

When using the NFC digital key, enable the NFC function of the mobile phone or wearable device. Here is how to use:

- To unlock or lock the vehicle, position the NFC antenna area of the smartphone or wearable device near the NFC sign on the driver side mirror. Consult the manufacturer for the NFC antenna area of your device.

CAUTION

- Some smartphone and wearable device models do not support NFC digital keys.

Removing the NFC digital key

There are two ways:

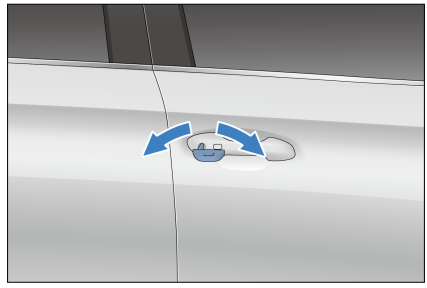
- Remove it via the BYD app:
  - Open the BYD app, navigate to the digital key management screen, select the key to be removed, and enter the password to remove it.
- Via the Wallet app:
  - Open the Wallet on the phone, select the digital key, and remove it according to the instructions.

Locking/Unlocking Doors

Locking/Unlocking with Mechanical Key

Insert the key into the key hole, turn and remove the key, and pull the door handle to open the door.

- Unlock the driver's door: Turn the key clockwise.
- Lock the driver's door: Turn the key counterclockwise.

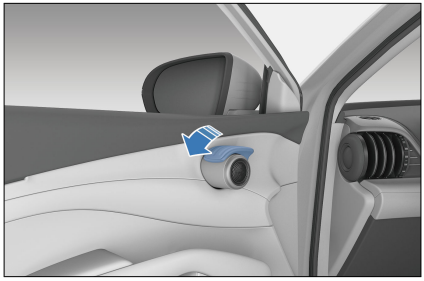


CAUTION

- After removing the mechanical key, pull the driver's door handle to open the door.

Opening with Interior Door Handle

- When the vehicle is unlocked, pull the handle once to open the door from inside the vehicle.
- When the vehicle is locked, pull the handle twice to open the door from inside the vehicle.



WARNING

- Do not allow children to play with the door handle, so as to avoid the door opening while driving.
- If there are children in the vehicle, make sure to enable the child protection lock function.

CAUTION

- As this vehicle is equipped with a child protection lock, the rear doors can only be opened with the interior door handle when the child protection lock is disabled.

Locking/Unlocking with Smart Key

- The wireless remote control is used to unlock or lock all doors at a close distance, and complete additional functions.
- When you enter the active area while carrying a registered smart key, press the button on the smart key slowly and firmly to lock or unlock all doors.

Locking:

- When all the doors, the boot, and the bonnet are closed, press the lock button to lock all the doors. Check whether all doors are securely locked.
  - When the ignition is switched off, the side mirrors fold in (the switch is set to AUTO), and the turn signals flash once.

  - If the ignition is switched on, the side mirrors will not fold, the turn signals will not flash, and the alarm will sound once.
  - If any door, the bonnet or the boot is not closed, the side mirrors do not fold, the turn signals do not flash and the alarm sounds once.

Unlocking:

- With the doors locked, press the unlock button of the valid smart key. All doors will unlock, side mirrors unfold, and turn signals flash twice.
- When you unlock all the doors with the smart key, even if no door is opened, the interior lights will stay on for 15 seconds and then go out.

- If the anti-theft alarm system is armed, open any door within 30 seconds after unlocking with the smart key or all doors will relock automatically.
- If the key is in the vehicle or boot when the doors are closed and locked, the vehicle will unlock automatically and the turn signals will flash twice.
- When the vehicle is equipped with four-door anti-pinch function, pressing and holding the lock/unlock button to rise/lower the windows, and pressing briefly to lock/unlock the doors.

Opening the boot with smart key

- Double-press the boot release button on the smart key. The turn signals then flash twice.

REMINDER

- Remember to carry the smart key when leaving the vehicle.

Finding the Vehicle with Smart Key

- With the anti-theft alarm system armed, pressing the lock button sounds a long beep and makes turn signals flash 15 times. Use this function to locate the vehicle when it cannot be found.
- When the vehicle is in car search mode, press the lock button again. The vehicle enters the next car search mode.

Raising/Lowering Windows with Smart Key

- When the ignition is switched off:
  - Press and hold the lock button on the smart key to raise the four windows.
  - Press and hold the unlock button on the smart key to lower the four windows.

WARNING

- When using the remote control function to raise windows, pay attention to the safety of occupants in the vehicle, and use this function only after making sure the windows are clear from pinching anyone.

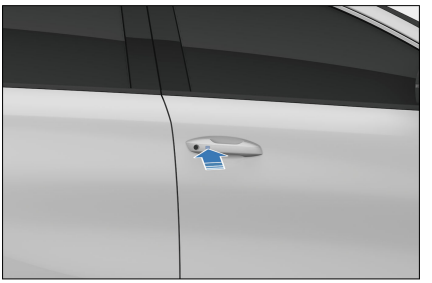
REMINDER

- To enable or disable key unlocking/locking/opening/closing window functions, go to → **Locks** → **Locks**. (Configurations of the actual vehicle prevail.)

Locking/Unlocking with Microswitch

Locking

- When the ignition is switched off and all doors are closed but not locked, press the microswitch on the front door handle while carrying the smart key. All doors will be locked and turn signals flash once.
- If a door, the bonnet or the boot is not closed, pressing the microswitch will still lock the closed doors, but the horn will only sound once, and the turn signals will not flash.



Unlocking

- When doors are locked, press the microswitch on the front door handle while carrying the smart key close to the activated area. All doors unlock and turn signals flash twice.
- If the anti-theft alarm system is armed, open a door within 30 seconds after the unlocking. or all doors will relock automatically.
- Pressing the microswitch does not work if:
  - This is performed while a door is being opened or closed.
  - The smart key is left in the vehicle.

REMINDER

- If the smart key is too close to an exterior door handle or window, it may not be possible to activate the entry function.

Raising/Lowering Windows with Microswitch

- When the ignition is switched off, press and hold the microswitch while carrying the smart key to roll up or down all windows. (To enable or disable this function, go to the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → Locks → Locks.)

Locking/Unlocking with NFC Key

Locking doors:

- With the ignition switched off and all doors closed but not locked, place the valid NFC key close to the NFC mark on the driver's side mirror to simultaneously lock all the doors. The turn signals flash once.

Unlocking doors:

- When doors are locked, hold the NFC key close to the designated area on the driver's side mirror. Then all doors can be unlocked at the same time. The turn signals flash twice.
- Putting the effective NFC key close to designated area on the driver's side mirror does not work if:
  - The NFC key is placed close to the designated area on the driver's side mirror while a door is being opened or closed.
- To use the NFC digital key on the phone, enable the NFC function of the phone and hold the top back part of the phone close to the designated area on the driver's side mirror.

CAUTION

- The keyless start permission lasts for up to four minutes.
- The NFC digital key may not work on some phones when they are turned off.
- Avoid using the NFC digital key of your phone for extended periods or frequently when it is out of battery or turned off.

CAUTION

- If the anti-theft alarm system is armed, open a door within 30 seconds after the unlocking with the NFC key, or all doors will relock automatically.
- After unlocking by NFC key, the user can start the vehicle in a certain period, while this will be disabled after locking with valid key.

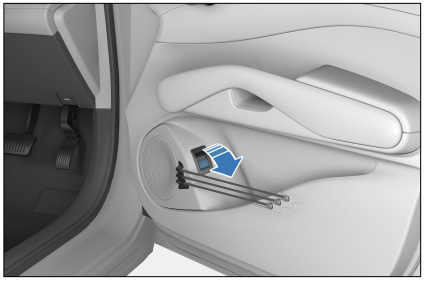
Illustration of Locking/Unlocking the Boot

Unlocking the boot with smart key

- Double-click the boot opening button on the smart key, and the turn signals will flash twice.

Opening/Closing the boot from the inside

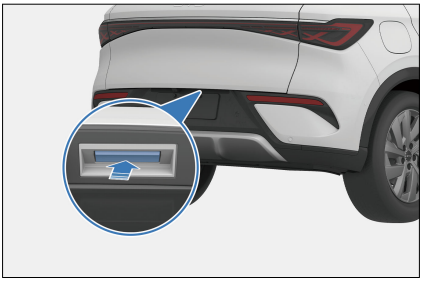
- When the boot lid is closed, pull the switch once, and the lid will automatically unlock and open to the set height (maximum height by default).
- While the boot lid is opening, pull this switch again to freeze it in place.



- When the boot is open and the switch is pulled for more than one second, the lid closes automatically. Release the switch to freeze the closing motion.

Opening the boot with exterior switch

- With the vehicle unlocked, press the exterior boot switch to open the boot.
- With the vehicle locked, unlock the vehicle with the smart key and press the exterior switch to open the boot.



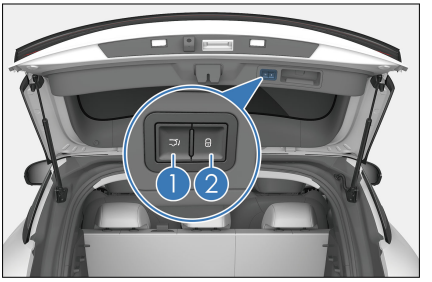
REMINDER

- If the switch is pressed again while the lid is in motion, it will stop at its current position.

Closing the boot automatically

① Boot close button

- When the boot lid is open and stationary, press the boot close button to close this lid.
- Press this button a second time to stop the lid at the current position. Press this button again to have the lid move in the opposite direction.



② Vehicle lock button

- When the ignition is off and the boot is open, pressing the lock switch while carrying a valid smart key closes the boot, locks the entyre vehicle, and arms the anti-theft alarm system.

Closing the boot manually*

- When the vehicle is unlocked, the boot can be closed manually.

Opening/Closing boot with BYD Assistant*

- The boot can be opened or closed by BYD Assistant after system wake-up.

CAUTION

- Before closing the boot electronically, make sure doors, windows and sunroof are properly closed.

Setting boot opening height

- Open the trunk manually or automatically to the desired position, keep it at this position, and then press and hold the interior trunk button for over three seconds. The speaker sounds for one second, indicating that the opening height is successfully set to the current position.
- Set the boot opening height by going to the infotainment touchscreen → → Locks → Doors.

Anti-pinch function

- The boot will open or stop moving if it contacts any obstacle while closing or opening.

When the boot fails to act automatically

- Manually and completely close the boot for recovery.

When reconnecting the low-voltage battery

- Manually close the boot to ensure the power boot lid* functions normally.

WARNING

- In order to prevent serious injury, make sure to observe the following precautions:
  - Never deliberately activate the anti-pinch function with any part of your body.
  - Make sure to alert people nearby of the lid motion.
  - Make sure hands and fingers are clear from the lid area when it is closing.
  - Make sure the surrounding area is safe when opening or closing the boot.
  - Make sure the boot is properly closed when the vehicle is in motion.
  - Make sure to remove any ice or snow from the area before opening the boot, otherwise the lid may close again.
  - Do not manually interfere in lid motion when it is opening or closing*.
  - Be mindful of windy conditions when opening or closing the boot.
  - The anti-pinch function may fail to work if an object is caught right before the boot is fully closed.
  - The lid may start closing before fully opening. Opening or closing the boot on slopes is more difficult than on level ground. Be mindful of the possibility of the lid to move on its own in such conditions. Before loading or unloading the boot, make sure the lid is fully open and secure.

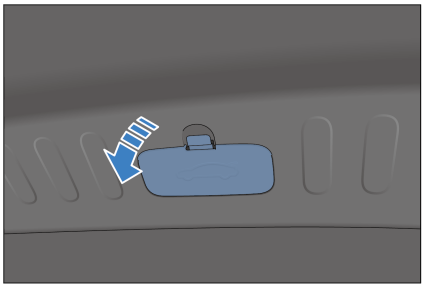
WARNING

- The anti-pinch function may fail depending on the object shape. Be especially careful about hand and fingers.

Boot Lid Emergency Unlocking

Emergency unlocking of the boot can be achieved by

1. lowering the rear seats.
2. There is an emergency unlocking cover just above the boot lock.
3. Open the cover and pull the emergency unlocking rope or lever to open the boot in an emergency.



REMINDER

- When the vehicle is powered off, the boot lid can be unlocked from the inside in case of emergency.

Locking/Unlocking with Central Locking

Locking or unlocking the vehicle with the central locking

See ***P74*** for details

Locking or unlocking doors automatically

- All doors automatically lock at vehicle speeds above 5 mph(8 km/h).
- Press the START/STOP button to switch the ignition off. Then, all doors are unlocked automatically.

Locking/unlocking all doors concurrently

- With the anti-theft alarm system disarmed, the backlight of the central lock button turns on if the vehicle is locked and off if the vehicle is unlocked.
- Pressing the central lock button locks all doors so that any attempt to open any door from the outside fails. At this time, pull the interior handle to unlock a door and pull a second time to open it.

Emergency Vehicle Locking with Mechanical Key

When the central locking system or the smart key fails, use the mechanical key for emergency locking or unlocking.

Locking

1. Remove the mechanical key from the smart key.
2. Open all doors other than the driver's door and move down the slider with the mechanical key as shown. You can then lock the doors by closing the them.

3. After locking the three doors, open the driver's door.
4. Insert the mechanical key into the keyhole, turn it counterclockwise as far as it can go, return it to the initial position and pull it out (see ***P50***).

Unlocking

1. Remove the mechanical key from the smart key.
2. Insert the mechanical key into the keyhole, turn it clockwise as far as it can go, return it to the initial position and pull it out.
3. Pull the interior handle twice to unlock the three other doors.

REMINDER

- Prevent excessive force from distorting or breaking the key during the operation.

Smart Access and Start System

Use the smart key to unlock or lock the vehicle doors and start the vehicle.

Access

Use the key fob to unlock or lock the vehicle doors (See for details ***P51***)。

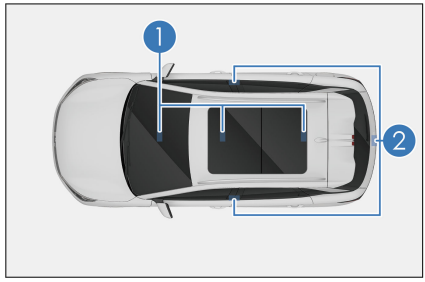
Start-up

With the smart key inside, press the brake pedal and the START/STOP button to start the vehicle (See ***P110***).

Antenna positions

① Interior antenna

② Exterior antenna



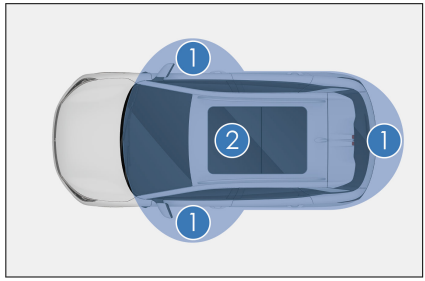
Active area

The smart access and start functions take effect only when the registered key fob is within the active area.

① Active area of the access function: about one meter from the front door handle and the exterior boot switch.

② Active area of the start function: inside the cabin.

If another smart key is near this vehicle's smart key, unlocking may take longer than usual, which is normal.



REMINDER

In the following situation, smart access and start system may not work normally:

- There is a strong electromagnetic field nearby, such as TV towers, power stations, and broadcasting stations.

REMINDER

- The key fob is being carried along with a communication device, such as a two-way radio or mobile phone.
- The smart key is in contact with or covered by a metal object.
- The door handle is operated too quickly.
- The smart key is too close to the handle.
- Another wireless remote control function is being used nearby.
- When the smart key battery runs out.
- The smart key is close to high-voltage equipment or equipment that produces noise.
- The key fob is being carried along with another key fob or radio-wave-emitting device.
- Even within the active area, the smart key may not work properly in certain locations, for example, on the dashboard, in the glove box, or on the floor.

- If the smart access system is not working properly and it is impossible to enter the vehicle, the mechanical key can be used to lock/unlock the driver's door, or the wireless remote control function can be used to lock/unlock all doors.
- Pressing the START/STOP button may not enable the start function due to:
  - Key fob failure. If the key fob warning light comes on and a message ("Low key battery, please replace the battery soon") is displayed on the instrument cluster, the battery of the key may be exhausted.
- If the smart access and start system cannot work properly due to system failures, bring all smart keys to a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for repair.

Saving battery power

- The key fob communicates with the vehicle even when the vehicle is not running. Therefore, do not leave the key fob in the vehicle or within two meters from the vehicle.
- Receiving strong electromagnetic waves for a long time drains the battery of the smart key quickly. The smart key must be kept at least one meter away from electrical equipment that generates a magnetic field, such as the following devices:
  - Television
  - Personal computer
  - Phone charger
  - Electroliers
  - Fluorescent desk lamp

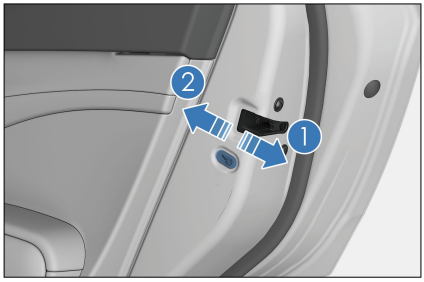
Child Protection Lock

Child protection locks are designed to prevent children in rear seats from accidentally opening rear doors. Such locks are provided on the sides of the left and right rear doors.

① Locking

② Unlocking

The door cannot be opened from inside the vehicle while the latch is locked. The rear doors can only be opened with the exterior door handles.



CAUTION

- Before driving, especially when a child is in the vehicle, ensure that the doors are closed and the child protection lock function is enabled.
- Proper use of seat belts and the child protection lock helps prevent the driver and passengers from being thrown out of the vehicle in the event of an accident, and prevent the doors from being opened accidentally.

Seat

Seat Precautions

- Adjust the driver's seat so that the pedals, steering wheel, and dashboard controls are within the driver's easy control.
- While driving, the most effective safeguard is to keep the seatback upright, always rest well on the seatback, and adjust the seat belt to the right position.
- Rear seats cannot be folded in with the vehicle running.
- Secure your luggage appropriately to prevent it from skidding or moving.

  Luggage in the vehicle should not be higher than seatbacks.
- The head support can only protect your head when it is in the proper position. Remember to adjust it to the proper position if it has been moved.

WARNING

- Sitting on a folded seatback, in the boot, or on cargo is prohibited. Improper seating position or improperly fastened seat belts can result in personal injury in case of emergency braking or a collision.
- Do not place any items under the seats. The driver may lose control of the vehicle because items placed there affect the seat locking mechanism, causing the seat to move suddenly.
- When adjusting the seat, ensure sufficient space around the seat and in the rear seating area for children, passengers, or pets. Avoid squeezing or trapping children, occupants, or pets in the rear seat area.
- Maintain a safe distance from surrounding occupants' foot areas when adjusting the seat to avoid compression or entrapment.
- When adjusting the seat, do not place your hand under the seat or near its operating parts, to prevent being crushed.
- After adjusting the seatback, lean back to confirm the seatback is locked. Seatbacks that are not fully locked can cause personal injuries in an accident or during emergency braking.
- Do not put the seatback down while driving or riding in the

WARNING

vehicle. This makes the shoulder strap of the seat belt not properly attached to the body. As a result, occupants in the vehicle could hit the strap in an accident, causing injuries to the neck or other parts; or they may slip out of the waist belt, resulting in other serious injuries.

- Do not adjust the driver's seat while the vehicle is in motion, as unpredictable seat movement can cause the loss of vehicle control.
- Do not drive the vehicle until occupants are seated properly.
- Do not allow children to adjust the seat without adult supervision to avoid any injury.

CAUTION

- Adjust the seat position before fastening the seat belt.

Adjusting Front Seats

Adjusting Front Seat with Power*

Power front seat adjustment include seat position adjustment, cushion height adjustment*, and seatback angle adjustment. Choose the following methods according to the actual configuration of your vehicle.

① Seatback angle adjustment switch

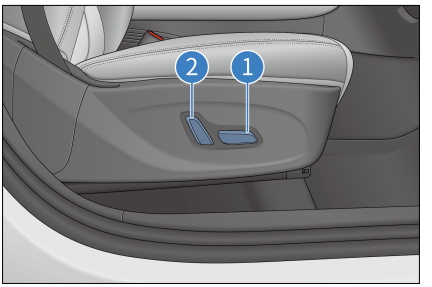
- Toggle the upper end of the seatback angle adjustment switch to adjust the seatback angle.

② Seat position adjustment

- Toggle the seat position adjustment switch back or forth to move the seat backward or forward.
- Move the rear end of the switch up or down to raise or lower the seat*.

③ Lumbar support adjustment switch*

- Press the front, rear, upper, or lower part of the switch to adjust the lumbar support.



CAUTION

- Releasing the switch stops the seat in this position. Do not place anything under the seat as this may prevent the seat from operating.
- Do not move the front seats too far forward to avoid contact with the roof or sun visor.

Ventilation and Heating System*

- Enable or disable seat ventilation and heating* by sliding down the shortcut screen from the top status bar on the infotainment touchscreen or by going to the infotainment touchscreen → .

Heating adjustment*

- Heated seat: Control the operation mode of the heating pad by using the seat heating switch. The heating function has three modes.

- After each power-on, the driver's seat remembers the last mode, and the initial heating state of the passenger's seat is Off.
- Tap the button to select the operation mode of the seat heater between the 1st gear to 3rd gear.
- Tap OFF to deactivate the heating function.

Ventilation adjustment*

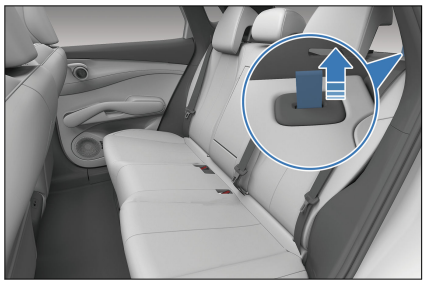
- Seat ventilation: use the ventilation switches to control the ventilation fan, which works in three levels.
  - After each power-on, the driver's seat remembers the last mode, and the initial ventilation state of the passenger's seat is Off.
  - Press the switch to select the operation mode of the seat ventilation between the 1st gear to 3rd gear.
  - Tap OFF to deactivate the ventilation function.

Ventilation and heating functions cannot be turned on at the same time.

- Press the heating switch to make the heater work; if the ventilation switch is then pressed, the heater will stop and the ventilator will start to work.
- Press the ventilation switch to make the ventilator work; if the heating switch is then pressed, the ventilator will stop and the heater will start to work.

Folding Rear Seats

- Flipping and lowering the seatback
  - Pull the cord to straighten the seatback. Rear Seats provide two gear to adjust.
  - Push the seatback forward/backward to fold it. You can fold the seatback forward until the back touches the cushion, or you can fold it backward until reaching the locking position (with a locking click).



REMINDER

- Fold or unfold the rear seats at a moderate speed. Avoid quickly lowering or pulling up seatbacks to prevent damage to or malfunction of rear seats and the seat belts.
- When unfolding a rear seat, do not push the seatback hard; otherwise, the seatback will be pre-stressed and impossible to unlock.
- When unfolding a seatback, check that the buckle position is proper to expose the reserved opening on the seat.
- Do not turn over the seat when the seat belt latch is inserted into the buckle.

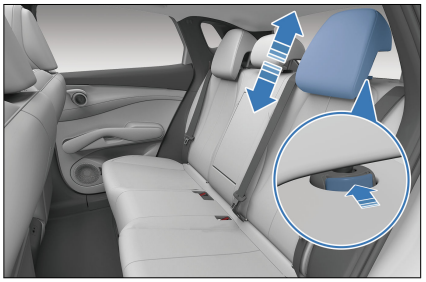
Adjusting Rear Seat Head Supports

- Lifting a head support

  Lift the head support to a proper position, and release it after hearing a locking sound.

- Lowering a head support

  Press and hold the head support adjustment button, lower the head support to a proper position, and then release the button after hearing a locking sound.



- Removing a head support

  Press and hold the head support adjustment button, remove the head support and release the button.

- Installing a head support

  Insert the head support levers into the bushing with the grooves facing forward. Press and hold the head support adjustment button, lower the head support to a proper position, slightly lift the head support and release the button after hearing a locking sound.

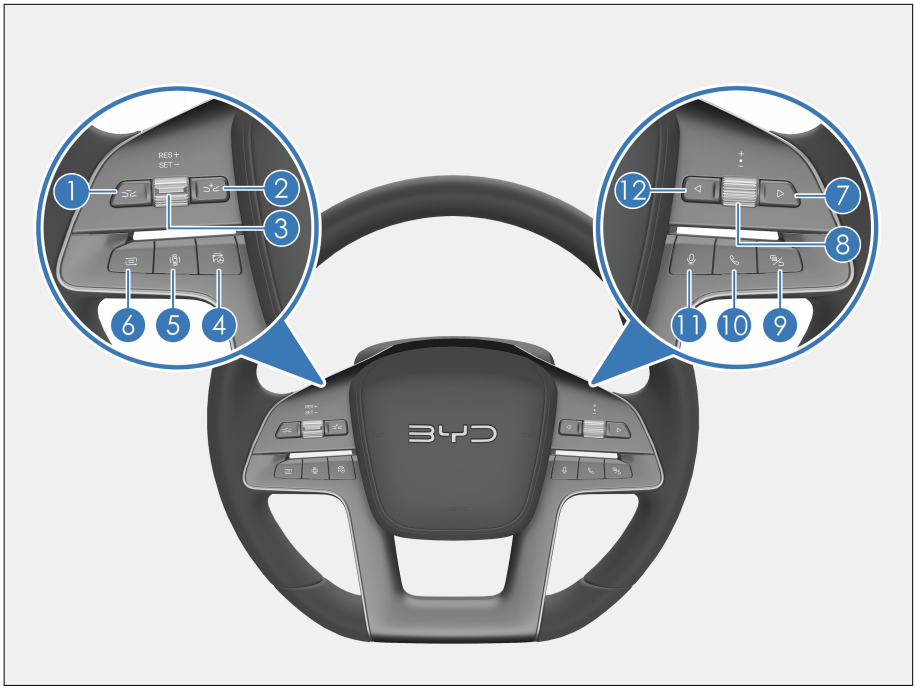
REMINDER

- To avoid any injury to heads and shoulders of the occupants, align the occupant's ear tip line with the centre of the head support when adjusting the head support height.
- After the adjustment, press down the head support to make sure that it is locked.
- Do not drive the vehicle without head supports.
- Do not attach any objects to the head support post.

Steering Wheel

Steering Wheel

Steering Wheel Switches



1	Distance -	7	Right
2	Distance +	8	Scroll button
3	Lever	9	Instrument cluster/Back
4	ACC	10	Call
5	Panoramic view*	11	Speech recognition
6	Driving information	12	Left

Left-hand buttons

Distance -

- Decreases the time-based following distance from the vehicle ahead by one level each time when it is pressed with ACC active. A total of four levels are available.

Distance +

- Increases the time-based following distance from the vehicle ahead by one level each time when it is pressed with ACC active. A total of four levels are available.

Lever

- Reset+: Restores the speed stored before exiting from the cruise system last time.
- Set-: Sets the current speed to the target cruise speed.

ACC

- Press this button to turn the adaptive cruise control system on or off.

Panoramic view*

- Press this button to enable or disable the panoramic view system.

Driving information

- Press to cycle through the driving information interfaces, and press and hold to clear the relevant driving information.

Right-hand buttons

Scroll button

- Adjusting infotainment system volume when the instrument cluster is not in menu mode:
  - Roll the button upward to increase the volume. The button is non-operational when the volume reaches the highest.
  - Roll the button downward to decrease the volume. The button is non-operational when the volume reaches the lowest.
  - Press down the button to mute.
- When the instrument cluster is in menu mode:
  - Roll the button upward to select the upper level-2 or level-3 menu items.
  - Roll the button downward to select the lower level-2 or level-3 menu items.
  - Press down the button to go to the next-level menu or confirm the current setting.

CAUTION

- The infotainment system is muted once the instrument cluster is set to the menu mode. To adjust infotainment system volume, exit the instrument cluster menu mode first.

Left/Right button

- When the infotainment system is in radio mode:
  - Press the ◁ button to select previous radio station.
  - Press the ▷ button to select next radio station.
- When the infotainment system is in USB/Bluetooth music/third-party music app/other modes:
  - Press ◁ to play the previous track (track number -1).
  - Press ◁ to select a record upward on the Bluetooth call record or phonebook screen.
  - Press ▷ to play the next track (track number +1).
  - Press ▷ to select a record downward on the Bluetooth call record or phonebook screen.
- In the menu mode:

- Press the ◁ button to switch to level-1 menu and its submenus on the left.
- Press the ▷ button to switch to level+1 menu and its submenus on the right.

Instrument cluster/Back

- When the instrument cluster is not in the menu mode, press Instrument cluster/Back to show the instrument cluster menu.
- When the instrument cluster is in menu mode, press this button to return to the upper-level screen, or to exit the menu if there is no upper-level screen.
- When on the Bluetooth call screen, press this button to end the call.

Call

- Press this button to make or receive a call. The audio system is muted at the same time.
- When a Bluetooth-unrelated screen is currently displayed, press this button to switch to the phone selection screen if Bluetooth is disconnected, or to the Dial screen if Bluetooth is connected.
- After entering a phone number on the Dial screen or selecting a record on the Call Log or Contacts screen, press this button to dial the number.
- When Bluetooth is connected, but no phone number is entered on the Dial screen, press this button to switch to the call log screen. Press this button again to call the first dialed number on the call history.

Speech recognition

- Press this button. The voice recognition screen is displayed and you can say the desired voice command.
- Press a second time to exit the screen.

Horn

- Press the horn button area to honk the horn, and release to stop honking.

CAUTION

- Avoid pressing honking for too long, as the horn may be damaged.

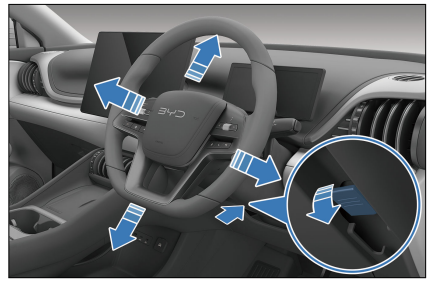
REMINDER

- Observe the traffic laws and use the horn properly.

Adjusting the Steering Wheel

To adjust the steering wheel position, hold it and operate as follows:

- Press the steering wheel adjustment handle, move the steering wheel to the desired angle, or adjust it to the desired axial position, and restore the handle to the locked position.



WARNING

- Never adjust the steering wheel while driving, as this is under risk of impaired vehicle control, which can lead to accidents.

WARNING

- After adjusting the steering wheel, move it up and down to verify that it is securely locked.

Steering Assist Mode Settings

- The level of steering assistance can be adjusted to individual preferences.
- To set the steering assist mode, go to infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → Vehicle → Driving Control → Steering Assist Mode, and select the Comfort or Sport mode.

REMINDER

- Setting the steering mode to sport mode is suggested if the steering wheel feels light when the vehicle is running at a high speed.

Steering Wheel Heating*

- Enable or disable steering wheel heatingon the infotainment touchscreen → → Heating → the steering wheel heating icon.*
- You can turn on the steering wheel heating remotely through BYD App to gain a comfortable interior environment in advance.

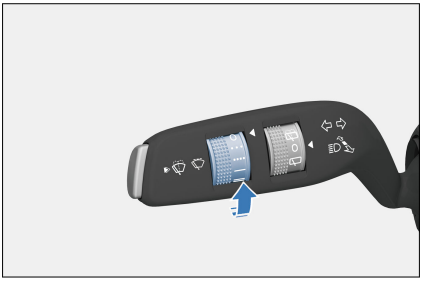
Wipers

Wiper Switch

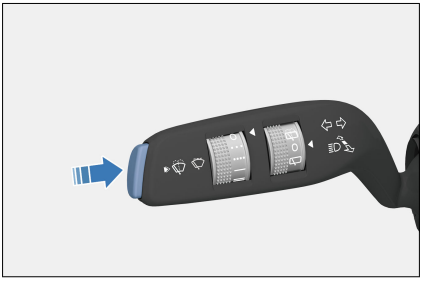
Front Windscreen Wipers and Washer

Front wiper

- The lever is used to control the windscreen wipers and washer. It has five settings:
  - : Auto/Intermittent wipers level 1
  - : Auto/Intermittent wipers level 2
  - : Slow
  - : Fast
  - 0 : OFF
- To select a mode, simply move the lever roller up or down.
- In slow and fast modes, the wiper operates continuously.



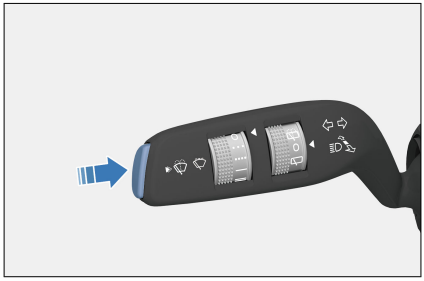
- To operate the wipers in intermittent mode, press the end button of the control lever to the first position. The wipers will operate at a low speed until the button is released.



Front windscreen washer

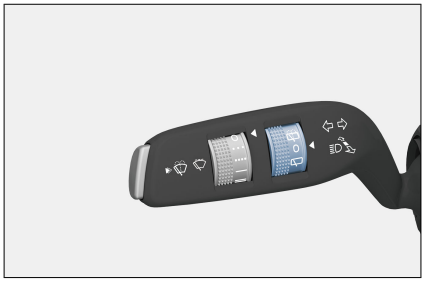
- To clean the front windscreen, pull the switch lever backward (towards the steering wheel) so that the washer sprays washing fluid and the wipers operate.

- When the stick is released, or when it is held for over 10 seconds, the washer spray stops, and the wipers stop after operating for 1–2 cycles.



Rear wiper

- Rotate the middle roller of the wiper switch to the position and the rear wiper enters intermittent mode.
- The rear wiper stops working when the middle roller of the wiper switch is set to the position or when the boot lid is opened.
- Rotate the middle roller of the wiper switch to the position and hold it to activate the rear windscreen wiper and washer simultaneously.



- Rotate the middle roller of the wiper switch to the position and release it. The wiper will operate 2 to 3 times and stop after washing fluid has been sprayed.

CAUTION

- Check and clean the wiper blades at regular intervals.
- Avoid using the wipers immediately after it starts raining, as the rain mixed with mud and dust will not clean the windscreen effectively and may instead cause instant blurred vision, affecting driving safety.
- When the wiper stops midway for snow accumulation and other reasons, please turn it off, park the vehicle in a safe place, and remove the snow and other debris, so that the wiper can work properly.
- Use cleaning agent for glass. The use of water, or another type of detergent, may damage the washer motor.
- Do not operate the washer for over 10 seconds, or when the washer fluid tank is empty, as those may cause motor overheating or damage.

Replacing Wiper Blades

Inspect front/rear wiper blades for cracks or partial hardening at least every six months. If they are noted, replace wiper blades. Otherwise, the windscreen will streak or will be left unclean after wiping.

CAUTION

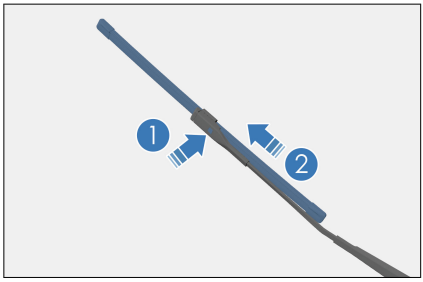
- Do not open the bonnet when wiper arms are lifted, otherwise it may damage the bonnet and wiper arms.

Replacing Wiper Blades

When the vehicle is powered on, enable or disable the front/rear wiper check function on the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → Drive → Overhaul. When the corresponding wiper check function is enabled, the wipers rotate out automatically for easy maintenance and replacement.

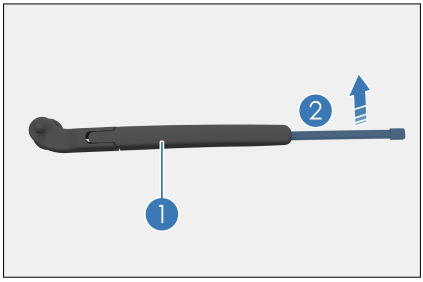
Replacing front wiper

1. Pull up the wiper arm at the driver side, and then pull up the other at the passenger side.
2. Press the wiper lock button ①.
3. Hold the wiper blade and pull it out along the indicated direction ②.
4. When installing a new wiper blade, follow the reverse procedure.



Replacing rear wiper

1. Pull up the wiper arm.
2. Hold the wiper in position ①, and pull the blade out vertically along the indicated direction ②.
3. When installing a new wiper blade, follow the reverse procedure.



⚠ CAUTION

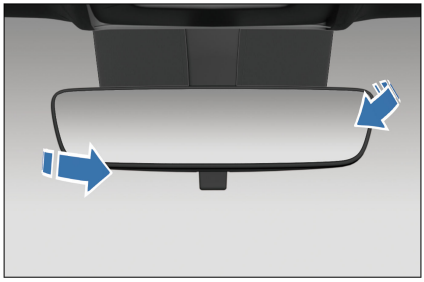
- Do not open the bonnet when the wiper arms are pulled up, as this may damage the bonnet and wiper arms.
- Lower the wipers slowly and avoid direct impact onto the windscreen.
- Do not bend the wiper blade, and do not obstruct the wiper blade when the wiper is in operation.
- When replacing the wiper blade, after raising the wiper arm, hold it steady and gently lower it after replacing the wiper blade. Otherwise, before the wiper blade is installed, any external force could make the wiper arm snap back on the glass and risk breaking it.

Rearview Mirrors

Interior Rearview Mirror

Adjusting the Rearview Mirror Manually

Move the interior rearview mirror up, down, left, or right to a suitable position.



WARNING

- Adjust the interior rearview mirror before driving. Do not adjust the rearview mirror while driving. This may distract your attention and cause accidents.
- Do not hang heavy objects from the interior rearview mirror, or shake or drag it with force.
- When manually adjusting the interior rearview mirror, do not forcibly adjust the stuck mirror, to prevent the mirror from falling off.

Automatic Anti-glare Interior Rearview Mirror

The automatic anti-glare interior rearview mirror is equipped with electronic anti-glare function, which automatically adjusts the lens colour of the mirror according to the surroundings to reduce the interference of rear glare on the driver's field of vision.

Electric side mirrors

Side Mirror Switches

Folding side mirrors with power

- Press the fold button to fold both left and right side mirrors, which will return to their pre-folding positions if this button is pressed again.
- The left side mirror can be selected by pressing the corresponding auto regulation switch .

- Side mirror auto-fold can be controlled by tapping → **Vehicle** → **Comfort Driving** → **Rear View Mirror** → **Auto-fold**.
- The right side mirror can be selected by pressing the corresponding auto regulation switch .
- There are four directions (i.e. up, down, left and right) for regulating lens directions to adjust the side mirrors.

WARNING

- Adjust the side mirrors before driving. Do not adjust the side mirrors while driving. This may

WARNING

distract your attention, causing accidents.

REMINDER

- Do not operate the controller or scrape the surfaces of frozen side mirrors. Use de-icer spray to remove the ice.
- Adjust the side mirrors before driving. Do not adjust the side mirrors while driving. This may distract your attention, causing accidents.

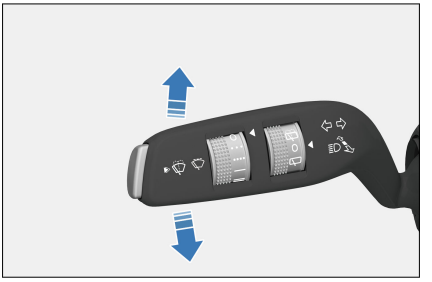
Switches

Light Switches

- The automatic lights, position lights, low beam, rear fog lights, and daytime running lights switches are integrated into the infotainment system.
- To turn off the auto light, position light, low beam, rear fog light and daytime running light, go to the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Light** → **Exterior Light**.

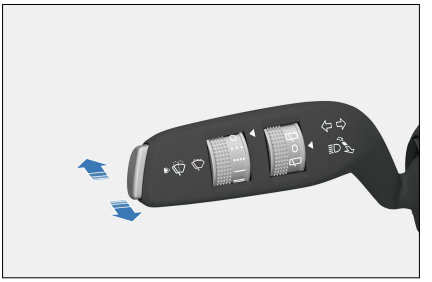
Turn signals

- Push up the lever to turn on the right turn signal and push down the lever to turn on the left turn signal.



High beam

- When the auto light or low beam function is activated in the infotainment system, push the lever to turn on or off the high beams.
  - Push the lever forward (away from the steering wheel) to turn on the high beams and then they are solid on.
  - Pull the lever back (close to the steering wheel) and the high beam flashes. Release the lever for the light switch to automatically reset and the high beams turn off.



REMINDER

- The light intensity sensor is located on the top of the windscreen. Do not block the sensor or let anything splash on it.

Auto light off

- Conditions to activate the auto light off function: to activate this function,

set the switch lever to position lights and low beam lights and switch off the vehicle power.

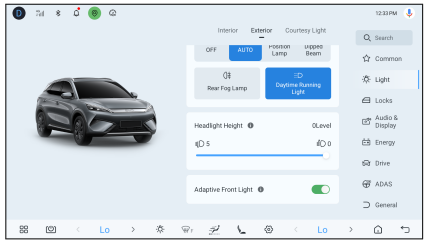
- When the auto light off function is activated, the headlights, position lights, rear fog lights, and high beams turn off in 10 seconds if the driver's door is closed.
- When the auto light off function is activated, the headlights, position lights, rear fog lights, and high beams turn off in 10 minutes if the driver's door is open.
- After the lights turn off automatically, if the light status changes, these lights come on in the new status. If the conditions to activate the auto light off function are still met, the function is activated again.
- Disabling the auto light off function: When the vehicle is powered on, the auto light off function is disabled, and the light switch can be operated normally.
- If the auto light off function has turned off the lights and the anti-theft alarm system has been armed, disarming the alarm system makes the lights come on again automatically. If the driver's door remains closed, the lights go off again after 10 seconds. But if any door is open, it turns off the light in 10 minutes.

Courtesy Light

- Headlights after exit:
  - Set the time for "Headlights after Exit" on the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → Light → Courtesy Light (default: 10 seconds). With the lights set to "Auto Lights", "Position Lights" or "Low Beam", when you power off the vehicle, lock four doors and attempt to leave the vehicle, the corresponding lights will continue to light up for 10 seconds (or the set time) to provide coming-home lighting.
- Headlights before enter:
  - Set the time for "Headlights before Enter" on the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → Light → Courtesy Light (default: 10 seconds). With the light adjustment switch turned to "Auto Lights", "Position Lights" or "Low Beam", when you unlock the vehicle and attempt to approach it, the corresponding lights will light up for 10 seconds (or the set time) to provide the leaving-home lighting.

Adjusting Headlight Height

When the low beam is on, tap ⚙ → Light → Exterior Light → Headlight Height on the infotainment touchscreen to adjust the vertical beam angle of the headlights.



Loading Conditions	Recommended Lighting Level
One person in the driver seat	0-2
The driver, plus one passenger in the front seat	

Loading Conditions	Recommended Lighting Level
All the seats occupied	0-2
All seats occupied, plus an evenly distributed load in the boot	1-3
Driver, plus an evenly distributed load in the boot	1-3

- Vehicle loading conditions may differ. Adjust accordingly.

AFL adaptive front light

- Intelligent high beam control is a driver assistance function that helps the driver use the high beams correctly in the dark. In the dark, the system switches from low beam to high beam to provide the driver with the maximum field of vision. When an oncoming vehicle is detected, the system automatically switches from high beam to low beam to prevent dazzlling other drivers. It also automatically switches to low beam in urban areas or under other conditions.

Function settings

- Enable or disable adaptive front light on the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → Light → Exterior Light → Adaptive Front Light.
- When the vehicle is started, the system defaults to previous settings.
- AFL adaptive front light example:

ACC standby	ACC activated	Fault

IHBC on/off conditions

- Auto activation conditions:
  - The light switch is in AUTO position.
  - The vehicle speed is 22 mph - 87 mph(35 km/h - 140 km/h).
  - The area in front of the vehicle is dark.
- Auto off conditions:
  - During daylight or nighttime conditions, the system automatically suppresses the high beam when sufficient ambient lighting is detected on the road.
  - At night, the system automatically suppresses the high beam when other vehicles or pedestrians are detected within a certain range in front of the vehicle.
  - At night, turning on turn signal suppresses the high beam. After the turn signal is turned off, the high beam is activated again if conditions are met.

WARNING

Due to a variety of environmental factors and conditions, the intelligent high beam may be

WARNING

triggered or disabled by mistake. Typical scenarios include, but are not limited to:

- The weather, such as fog, rain or snow, is extremely terrible for driving.
- There are traffic participants with poor lighting (such as pedestrians and bicycles), railways or waterways nearby, or wild animals on the roads.
- There are strongly reflective objects around, such as traffic signs on highways and water reflection on the road surface.
- The front windscreen is dirty, covered in mist, or blocked by stickers or decorations.

CAUTION

- The adaptive front light system is an auxiliary light control function, but the system cannot completely replace the driver's judgement. The driver must observe road regulations and actively switch between high and low beams according to road condition changes at all times.
- In case there is a collision or the sensor has been reassembled, it is recommended to go to a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for sensor calibration so as to avoid affecting system performance.

REMINDER

- System malfunctions or lighting system failures can affect the AFL function.

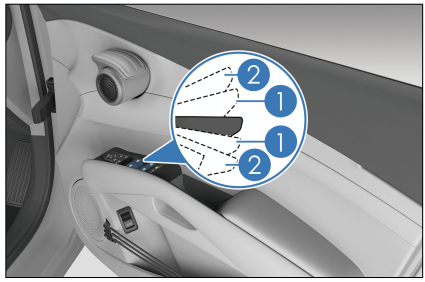
REMINDER

- Activating high beam manually will suppress AFL function.

Driver's Door Switch Group

Power Window Switches

- When the ignition is on, all the window switches can roll up or down the window.
  - Press the window switch to roll the window down.
  - Pull up the window switch to roll the window up.



Manual operation

- Press or pull a window switch to position ① and hold to lower or raise the associated window. Release the switch to stop the window where you want it.

Automatic up/down function

- Press or pull a window switch to position ② and release to automatically lower or raise the associated window. During the process, operate the switch in any direction to stop the window midway.

Anti-pinch function

- If someone or an object is caught by the window when it is rolling up, the window stops and rolls down a certain distance automatically.

Anti-pinch initialisation

- Close the window, release the switch, and then operate the switch and hold it for at least 400 ms.

When automatic up or anti-pinch function fails

- Follow the steps below to restore the function:
  - Pull up the window switch to raise the window glass to the top position and hold it there for about two seconds, and then press to lower the window glass to the bottom and hold it there for about two seconds. The automatic up and anti-pinch functions can be recovered.

Delay function*

- After the vehicle is powered off, if the front doors are not open, the four-door window controller has a roll-up/down delay period of 10 minutes. During this period, the windows can still be rolled up and down. If either of the front doors is opened during this period, the delay function is canceled, and the switches can no longer be used to operate the windows.

WARNING

- Never deliberately activate the anti-pinch function with any part of your body.
- Please follow the precautions below to prevent serious injury or death from window closing:
  - Before operating the power windows, ensure that all passengers do not have any body parts that can be caught in the window.
  - Do not allow a child to operate the power windows.

CAUTION

- Excessively frequent activation of the anti-pinch function can activate the regulator motor's overheat protection.
- If the low-voltage battery is disconnected while a window is being rolled up or down, the automatic rolling-up and anti-pinch functions both cease to work.
- The anti-pinch function may not work if an object is jammed into the window when it is almost completely closed.
- Contacting a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for servicing is recommended if the windows' auto up or anti-pinch function fails.

Central Locking

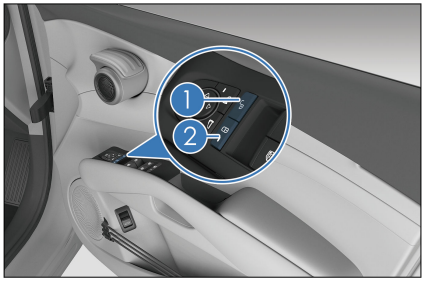
- The driver's door is equipped with power door lock switches to lock or unlock all doors.

① **Unlocking**

- Press the central unlock button. All doors are unlocked and the red lock indicator turns off.

② **Locking**

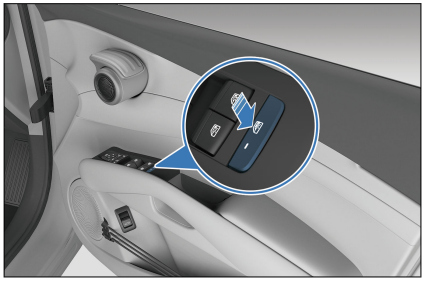
- Press the central lock button. All doors are locked and the red lock indicator lights up.



- All doors unlock automatically when the vehicle suffers a strong impact, depending on the impact intensity and accident type.

Window Lock Button*

- Pressing this button deactivates the window switches on the rear row. The window switches on the sides of the driver and the front passenger remain operational.
- Press the switch a second time. The indicator goes out, and all the window switches work normally.



Odometer Switch

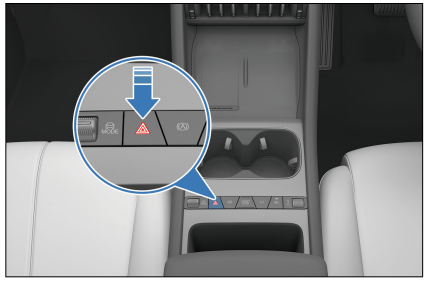
- The corresponding settings are accessible on the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → Audio & Display → Instrument → Range Display Mode. Total mileage (Mileage 1 and Mileage 2)

Window Control Switch on Passenger Side

When the ignition is on, the window switches near passengers can be used to roll the associated window up or down.

Hazard Warning Light Switch

When the ⚠ button is pressed, all turn signals and turn signal indicators on the instrument cluster start flashing. They all stop flashing when the ⚠ button is pressed again.



⚠ CAUTION

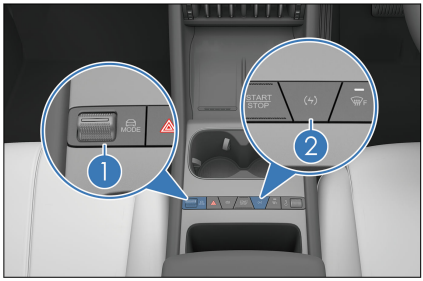
- The hazard warning lights are used to alert drivers and pedestrians of possible risks.

Mode Switches

① Driving Mode Adjustment Lever

- Available driving modes include Normal (NORMAL), Economy (ECO), Sport (SPORT), and snow mode. Using the stick, choose among the different modes shown on the cluster to suit your different needs.

② Regenerative braking mode button



- Press the button to increase regenerative braking force.
- When this switch is pressed again, standard regenerative braking mode is enabled.

CAUTION

- Shutting down the Electronic Stability Controller (ESC)may help if the motor performance is degraded in soft snow conditions by the activation of dynamic stability control. The ESC system must be restarted after conditions are back to normal.

PAB Switch*

- The front passenger airbag can be activated or deactivated with a front passenger airbag switch.
- To disable or enable the front passenger airbag in the infotainment touchscreen → **Driving** → **Intelligent Assist**.
- The front passenger airbag indicator is located on the ceiling/multimedia State.
- Enable or disable the front passenger airbag according to the use of the front passenger seat:
  - When the switch is turned on, the front airbag of the front passenger is turned on, and the "PASSENGER AIRBAG ON " of interior ceiling lamp is normally on. The icon in the multimedia status bar PASSENGER AIRBAG ON will disappear after it is displayed for 100 seconds. After clicking the icon, a pop-up window will prompt that the front passenger airbag is in the enabled state. The front passenger airbag deploys in the event of a moderate to severe collision that meets the necessary deployment conditions.
  - When the switch is turned off, the front airbag of the front passenger is disabled, the "PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF" of the ceiling interior lamp is always on, and the icon PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF of the multimedia status bar is always on. After clicking the icon, a pop-up window will prompt that the front passenger airbag is currently disabled. The front passenger airbag does not deploy in the event of moderate to severe collisions that meet the necessary deployment conditions.

WARNING

- Never use a rear-facing child restraint on the front passenger seat with an activated passenger

WARNING

airbag. Failure to do so can result in serious personal injuries or death.

- When an adult sits in the front passenger seat, the front passenger airbag switch must be turned on, and the front passenger airbag must always be turned on.
- If the front passenger airbag remains active when the front passenger airbag switch is off, immediately contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

CAUTION

- It is the driver's responsibility to confirm that the front passenger airbag switch is in the correct position for the person sitting in the front passenger seat.

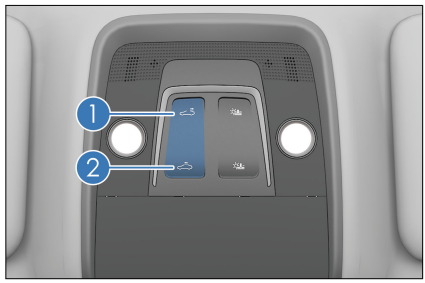
Sunroof Switch*

Panoramic Sunroof*

The sunroof can only be operated when the vehicle is powered on or when the power-off delay has not expired.

Opening the sunroof

- Press and hold the sunroof open button ① to open the sunroof. Release the button midway to stop the sunroof at its current position.
- If the sunroof has been initialised, pressing the sunroof open button ① and release it immediately, the sunroof tilts up for ventilation. Pressing the button again will set the sunroof to open automatically by about 80%. Touching the button once more will open the sunroof completely. If button ① or ② is pressed when the sunroof is opening, the sunroof will stop at its current position.



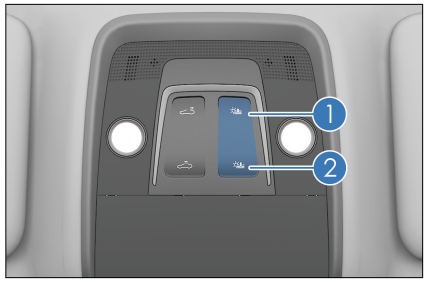
Closing the sunroof

- Press and hold the button ② to close the sunroof and release the button midway to stop it.
- If the sunroof has been initialised, releasing the button ② immediately after pressing it closes the sunroof automatically. For the sunroof to stop, press button ① or ② midway.

Opening/Closing the Sunshade*

Opening the sunshade

- Press and hold the sunshade open button ① to open the sunshade. Release the button midway to stop the sunshade.
- Release the button ① immediately after pressing it to open the sunshade automatically. For the sunshade to stop, press button ① or ② midway.



Closing the sunshade

- Press and hold the button ② to close the sunshade and release the button midway to stop it.
- If the sunshade has been initialised, releasing the button ② immediately after pressing it closes the sunshade automatically. For the sunshade to stop, press button ① or ② midway.

CAUTION

- When opening or closing the sunshade, avoid forceful contact with its curtain, to prevent damage.

Sunshade linkage

- When the sunroof is opened, the sunshade will be opened together with the sunroof.

Anti-pinch Sunroof*

If the sunroof or sunshade closing process is obstructed by anything, it will stop and slightly retract.

WARNING

- Keep clear of the sunroof when it is opening or closing, or severe injury may occur.
- Passengers must refrain from sticking hands or their heads out through the sunroof. Otherwise, severe injury or even death may occur.

CAUTION

- Trying to open the sunroof in outside temperatures below 0°C or when it is covered in snow or

CAUTION

frost may damage the sunroof or its motor.

Initialisation

- In the event of the sunroof system malfunction, the sunroof and the sunshade may not be able to open or close with a single press, affecting the proper operation of the anti-pinch function. Performing an initialisation reset can restore normal functionality, Operation steps are as follows:
  - Press and hold the sunroof close button until the sunroof fully closes. Release the button after hearing a "click" sound and the initialisation process is complete.
  - Press and hold the sunshade close button until the sunshade fully closes. Release the button after hearing a "click" sound and the initialisation process is complete.

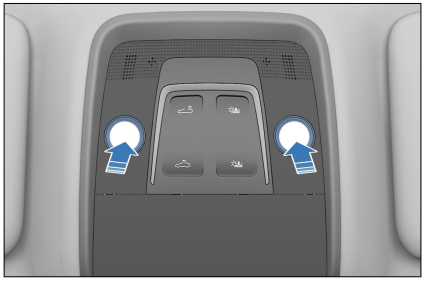
Anti-pinch function

- The sunroof (sunshade) may experience significant resistance due to freezing, snow accumulation, or foreign objects, potentially causing anti-pinch rebound and making it difficult to close the sunroof (sunshade). In such cases, after it has rebounded twice, immediately hold down the sunroof (sunshade) close button until it operates to the fully closed position. Release the button after hearing a "click" sound and the initialisation process is complete.

Interior Light Switch

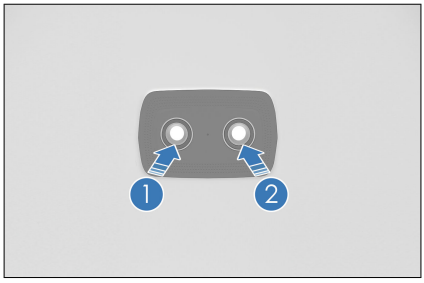
Front Interior Lights

- Press the interior light buttons to turn on left/right interior lights. Press again to turn them off.



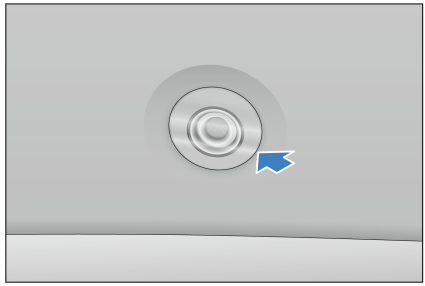
Rear Interior Lights*

- Touch button ① to turn on the left light. Touch button ① again to turn it off.
- Touch button ② to turn on the right light. Touch button ② again to turn it off.



Rear Side Interior Light Switches

- With the vehicle in any power mode, press this button to turn on the left/ right interior light.
- Press again to turn off the left/right interior light.



Smart Ambient Lights*

When the door is opened, the smart interior ambient lights turn on automatically to create a pleasant environment in the cabin.

- You can set by the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → Light → Interior Light → Ambient Light to set:
  - Ambient light colours
  - Ambient light brightness
  - Ambient light adjustment area
  - Dynamic colours*
  - Dynamic music rhythm ambient lighting*

04 USING AND DRIVING

Discharging Instructions..... 82
Batteries.....98
Usage Precautions.....102
Starting and Driving.....110
Driving Assistance.....120
Other Main Functions..... 163

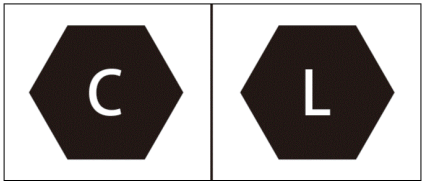
Discharging Instructions

Charging Instructions

- Charging equipment uses high-voltage current. Minors are prohibited to charge the vehicle or touch the charging equipment. Keep them away from the vehicle during charging.
- Charging may affect medical or implanted electronic devices. Consult the device manufacturer before charging.
- Charge the vehicle in a relatively safe environment, and avoid charging in damp areas, or areas with fire or heat sources.
  - Protect the charging equipment against water contact on rainy days.
- Before charging:
  - Ensure that power supply equipment, charging connector, charge port, and charging connection device are free of defects, such as cable wear, rusted ports, cracked casings, or foreign objects in the ports.
  - Do not charge the vehicle when the charging connector's or port's plug, socket, or metal terminals are loose or damaged by rust or corrosion.
  - When the charging connector, port, power plug, or socket is visibly stained or damp, wipe them with a dry and clean cloth to ensure the connection is dry and clean.
- Use charging equipment that complies with local standards.
  - To avoid charging failure or fire, do not modify, disassemble, or repair the charging equipment and related ports. Contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider if there is a fault.
  - Do not use charging equipment that does not meet safety standards or has potential safety hazards. Do not allow children to use the charging equipment and keep animals away from the vehicle while charging.
- Ensure that your hands are properly dry before charging.
- If anything abnormal is found in the vehicle or charging equipment during charging, stop immediately and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- Always observe the following charging precautions to prevent damage to the vehicle:
  - Do not shake the charging connector, otherwise the vehicle charge port may be damaged.
  - Whenever possible, do not charge the vehicle in a thunderstorm, or there will be a risk of lightning strikes.
- Do not open the hood for maintenance while charging.
- After charging, do not disconnect the charging equipment with wet hands or while standing on any wet surface.
  - Before driving, ensure that the charging equipment is disconnected from the charge port.

Compatibility of vehicle and charging infrastructure *

- These signs are located on the vehicle charging socket and charging infrastructure components (e.g., charging stations and sockets).



- These signs refer to standardized charging systems in accordance with DIN EN 62196.

Charging Precautions

- When the SOC bar on the instrument cluster turns red, the high-voltage battery is about to be exhausted. Please charge it immediately, otherwise the service life of the high-voltage battery and your driving experience will be affected.
- Mode 2 charging means charging with an AC charging connector. It is recommended to use the dedicated AC lines and power sockets meeting local standards to avoid line damage and protective trip due to high-power charging, which can affect the normal use of other equipment.
- Avoiding damage to the charging equipment (precautions for charging equipment):
  - Prevent the charging equipment from any mechanical impact, such as falling and colliding with other objects.
  - Do not place the charging equipment near heaters or other heat sources.
  - Never drop the equipment or move it by pulling it directly by the cable. Take caution when moving the equipment.
- Switch the ignition off before charging.
- Before charging:
  - Make sure that the charging connector and charge port are free of foreign objects, and that the protective cap of the charging connector terminal does not get loose or deformed.
  - Hold the charging connector, align the connector with the charge port and push it in, making sure that they are properly connected.
- When charging is complete:
  - Stop charging first and make sure the charge port is unlocked.
  - Pull out the charging connector.
  - Do not force the charging connector out while the charge port is locked, otherwise the charge port may be damaged.
- The vehicle can be powered on to use A/C while charging. To ensure the charging power, it is recommended to turn off the A/C.
- It is recommended that no one stay in the vehicle during charging.
- It is recommended to park the vehicle in a ventilated area during charging.
- The vehicle system automatically stops charging when the high-voltage battery is fully charged.
- To stop AC or DC charging, turn off the charger before disconnecting the charging connector. In Mode 2 charging, remove the charging connector and then the power plug.
- When charging is complete and the charging connector is unplugged, make sure that the charge port's cap and door are closed, otherwise water or foreign materials may enter the port and affect its normal use.
- During DC charging, the DC charging power is relatively small during the identification period to identify the

real capability of the charging pile and allow the charging pile to exert its maximum output capacity, thereby bringing users a better charging experience.

- In low-temperature DC charging, high-voltage battery need to be heated due to the its propertiies. BYD adopts a solution that integrates the latest motor active heating technology with motor charging technology. It can provide a higher thermal efficiency to the battery with the same energy consumption. During the activation or deactivation of functions, there will be a temporary reduction in charging power for a smoother transiton with the charging pile system. However, the overall charging time will not be affected, and this is a normal part of the DC charging process.
- Before starting the vehicle, ensure that the charging equipment is disconnected. The locking mechanism can damage the charging equipment and the vehicle if the vehicle is started with the charging connector incorrectly inserted.
- Too high or too low battery temperatures compromise vehicle charging performance.
  - Power consumption for heating increases during low-temprature charging. During low-temperature charging, though the temperature control system can improve low-temperature charging capacity of the battery, due to output capacity limitations of charging piles, the charging time is extended, the heating time becomes longer and the power consumption of heating could be increased. This is a normal phenomenon.
  - Due to the low battery temperature, the charging current is small for vehicles with high SOC in low-temperature environments. For faster low-temperature DC charging, charging from low SOC is recommended.
  - To improve your experience, it is recommended to charge the vehicle immediately after using it, as the battery is relatively hot and has better charging performance.
  - In low-temperature regions, it is better to charge the vehicle in a heated indoor space.
  - In high-temperature regions, charging in a cool and ventilated place is recommended.
- Turning A/C on during low-temperature charging affects the performance of the battery temperature control system and charging.
- It is normal that when the battery temperature control system is working during charging, the charging power displayed on the instrument cluster may fluctuate temporarily.
- Before charging is complete, battery equalisation is activated for longer battery life and thus the charging time may be longer.
- The use of A/C may worsen battery temperature control system performance in DC charging at high temperatures, resulting in lower charging performance and longer charging time. To ensure charging efficiency, it is recommended to keep the A/C off during charging.
- When the heating or cooling function is enabled during charging, it is normal that both charging time and power consumption increase slightly.
- To ensure optimum battery temperature, the battery cooling system may continue working after charging is complete.

- During charging, the estimated remaining time to full charge is displayed on the instrument cluster or infotainment touchscreen. It is normal that this charging time may vary slightly across temperatures, SOC, and charging facilities. Before charging is completed, "Calculating..." is displayed on the instrument cluster.
- If the charge port door is frozen due to weather or other reasons, do not force it open.
- If you leave the vehicle parked for longer periods of time, it is recommended to charge it every three months in order to prolong its service life, and fully charge it before use again.

REMINDER

- Do not open the charge port door forcibly when it is locked.
- Do not force the charging connector in or out while the charge port is locked.

REMINDER

- Do not close the charge port door when the port cap is fully open.
- When the vehicle is charged, it is normal that the cooling fan and A/C compressor may operate automatically for the high-voltage battery to cool down.

Charging Mode

- Scheduled charging (only AC): charge the vehicle regularly at a scheduled charging time set by the user. See ***P91***for details.
- Immediate charging: Charging starts after the charging connector is connected.

General Charging Troubleshooting

Fault	Possible Cause	Keep the vehicle in an environment with appropriate temperature and charge it when the temperature becomes normal.
The charger is connected but charging does not start.	The high-voltage battery has been fully charged.	When the high-voltage battery is fully charged, the charging will stop automatically.
	High-voltage battery temperature is too high or too low.	Keep the vehicle in an environment with appropriate temperature and charge it when the temperature becomes normal.
	Low-voltage battery over-discharges.	Replace the low-voltage battery.
	Charging equipment fails.	If it is verified that the charging equipment's power indicator is working properly, or that there are no other unusual indications, change the charging equipment to charge again or contact the charging equipment supplier.

Fault	Possible Cause	Keep the vehicle in an environment with appropriate temperature and charge it when the temperature becomes normal.
	Vehicle display fails.	If it is verified that there is a charging system fault message on the instrument cluster, then stop the charging. It is recommended to contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.
Charging stops midway.	The power grid goes down.	During AC charging, if power supply resumes after short-time outage of the external power grid, BYD charging equipment will start charging automatically and no re-connection of the charging equipment is required.
	Charging cable is not connected properly.	Verify that the charging connection cable is not loosely connected.
	The high-voltage battery temperature is too high.	If the temperature of high-voltage battery is excessively high and the powertrain fault warning light turns on the instrument cluster, the charging will automatically stop. Charge the vehicle when the battery temperature returns to a normal level.
	Vehicle or charging pile fails.	If there is any fault prompt for the charging pile or the vehicle, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.
	Press the smart key, microswitch or window control switch.	To stop charging, remove the connector within 30 seconds after unlocking.

Charging

- Check Before charging:
  - Check the charging device for abnormalities such as cracked housing, worn cable, rusted plug, or foreign materials.
  - Do not charge when the charging connection becomes loose.
  - Make sure the port is clear of fluids or foreign objects, and its metal terminals are not rusty or corroded.
- In any of these cases, do not charge. Otherwise, personal injury may occur due to short circuit or electric shock.
  - Protect the charging equipment against water contact on rainy days.

Using Mode 2 Charging Cable*

1. **Equipment**

- Connect the vehicle to a socket that meets local standards to charge the vehicle.
- Use household sockets that meet the local standards to prevent line damage or tripping due to high-power charging, which can affect the normal use of other devices.
- This EV Mode 2 charging cable includes a power plug (complying with local

standards), a charging connector, a control box, and a charging cable. Connect the plug to a standard household power socket, and the charging connector to the vehicle's charge port.

- Charging time: refer to the charging time message on the instrument cluster.

REMINDER

- Contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider to select the appropriate power supply according to the charging equipment requirements.
- Charging equipment grounding instructions: The equipment must be properly grounded. In the event of failure or damage to the equipment, the grounding cable provides a minimum impedance to circuit discharge and thereby reducing the risk of electric shock.
- The power plug must match a properly installed and well-grounded power supply socket which meets the requirements of safety standards.

REMINDER

- The charging cable must not be placed in a spiral during charging, as this will affect heat dissipation.
- See the charging instructions for specific charging precautions.

WARNING

- See "Charging Instructions" for charging safety warnings.
- The highest working temperature allowed for the product is 50°C.

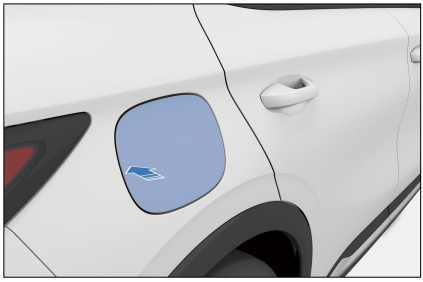
WARNING

Store it in a cool and dry place when it is not in use.

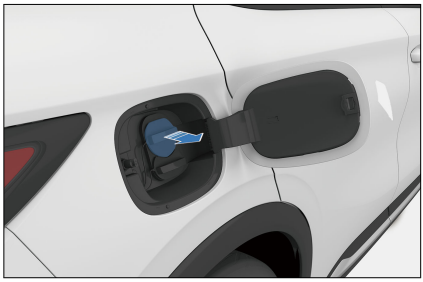
- When charging, do not place the equipment in the boot, under the front of the vehicle, or near the tyres.
- When using the equipment, prevent it from getting rolled over by the vehicle, dropped, or trampled on.
- Never drop the equipment or pull it directly by its cable. Take caution when moving the equipment.
- It is prohibited to modify, disassemble, or repair the charging equipment and its ports.
- It is not recommended to use any additional wire or adapter/ connector.
- Never use the charging equipment if the household power strip cable becomes soft, the charging connector cable is worn out, the insulation layer is cracked, or any other damage occurs.
- Never use the equipment when the charging connector, power plug, or power strip is disconnected, broken, or there is any sign of surface damage.
- To prevent failure of the charge port door, do not open and close it repeatedly.

2. **Charging**

- With the vehicle doors unlocked and preferably powered off, press the charge port door to open.



- Open the charge port cap, and make sure that no obstacles exist between the head of the charging connector and the end of the charging socket.



REMINDER

- Do not open the charge port door forcibly when it is locked.
- If the charge port door is frozen due to weather or other reasons, it is suggested to warm it with hot water and then open the port, do not force it open.

- Connect the power supply terminal:
  - Plug the EV Mode 2 charging cable into a household socket.
- Connect the vehicle port:
  - Plug the charging connector correctly into the port.
  - After the charging connector is inserted, the charging connection indicator lights up on the instrument cluster.

CAUTION

- In the charging process, the instrument cluster displays relevant charging parameters and the charging sign.
- At this time, you can go to ⚙ →Energy→Charge and Discharging to set smart charging.
- During charging, the estimated remaining time to full charge is displayed on the instrument cluster. It is normal that this charging time may vary slightly across temperatures, SOC, and charging facilities.
- Scheduled charging cannot be used when the battery is too low.

3. **Stopping charging**

- End charging:
  - The charging automatically ends when the vehicle is fully charged.
- Disconnect the charge port:
  - If the immobiliser is activated on the infotainment touchscreen, press the unlock button on the key or press the door handle microswitch with the key nearby, and then pull out the charging connector in 30s.

REMINDER

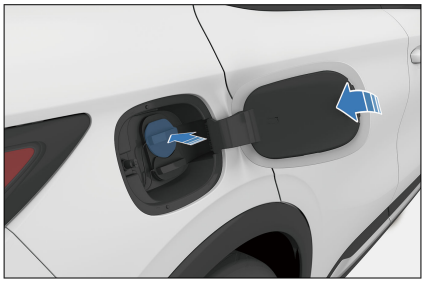
- To unlock the vehicle, press the unlock button on the key (when charging the vehicle with ignition switched off) or press the microswitch on the door handle (when the key is nearby).
- You can set the anti-theft lock on the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → Energy → Charge/

REMINDER

Discharging, as detailed in Charge Port Anti-theft Lock.

- When the anti-theft system is enabled, unlock the vehicle to release the charge port immobilizer before pulling out the charging connector. The connector has to be pulled out within 30 seconds, or the port will re-lock.
- If the charging connector cannot be removed after unlocking, try a few more unlocking attempts. If that does not work, try emergency unlocking. For the operating procedure, see Emergency Unlocking of the Charge Port.

- Disconnect the power plug.
- Close the charge port cap and the port door.
- Store the charging equipment properly.



REMINDER

- Do not close the charge port door when the port cap is fully open.

WARNING

- Never drop the EV Mode 2 charging cable or pull it directly by its cable. Take caution when moving the equipment. Take caution when moving the equipment. Store the equipment in a cool place after use.

Using AC Charging Piles

1. Equipment

- AC charging box
  - Use a standard-compliant household charging box. For how to use the charging equipment/pile, refer to its user manual and follow the operating steps.
  - AC charging box: consists of a charging box, a charging connector, and a connecting cable. For information on circuit breaker and emergency stop switch, see the charging box user manual.
- AC charging pile
  - Charge the vehicle with an AC charging pile in a public place. Since some charging piles are not equipped with charging connectors, AC charging connectors need to be prepared.
  - Charging time: Refer to the charging time message on the instrument cluster or infotainment touchscreen.

2. Charging

- Unlock the vehicle, then open the charge port door and cap:
  - To open the charge port cap and the port door, see instructions for ***P86***.
- Connect the vehicle port:

- Plug the charging connector into the port and make sure it is tight.

- Charging settings:
  - For AC charging pile/box subject to authentication, swipe the card or scan the QR code. For details, see the user manual for charging pile/box.
- The charging connection indicator lights up on the instrument cluster.
- In the charging process, the instrument cluster displays relevant charging parameters and the charging sign.
  - At this time, you can schedule smart charging on the infotainment system.

3. Stopping charging

- End charging:
  - Charging ends automatically when early stop time is due or charging is complete.
- Disconnect the charging connector:
  - Disconnect as per the instructions for ***P86***.
- Close the AC charge port cap* and the port door.
- Store the equipment properly.
  - If an AC charging pile/box is used, place the charging connector in its designated location.

Using DC Charging Piles

Before using DC charging piles:

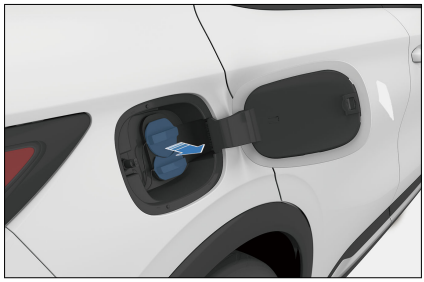
- To prevent serious personal injury, see Charging Safety Warnings in "Charging Instructions" carefully.
- To prevent damage to the charging equipment and the vehicle, see Charging Precautions in "Charging Instructions" carefully.

1. Equipment

- Charge the vehicle using a public DC charging pile at a charging station.
- Equipment specifications: Please check the instructions for the charger.
- Charging time: Refer to the charging time message on the instrument cluster or infotainment touchscreen.

2. Charging

- Unlock the charge port door, then open the port door and cap.
- Connect the vehicle port:
  - Plug the charging connector into the port and lock it.
- Operate the charging equipment according to the instructions to start charging.



- The charging connection indicator lights up on the instrument cluster.
- In the charging process, the instrument cluster or infotainment touchscreen displays relevant charging parameters and the charging sign.

3. Stopping charging

- End charging:
  - Charging ends automatically when early stop time is due or the charging is complete.
- Disconnect the charging connector:
  - Pull out the charging connector.

- When the DC charging pile charging is complete, organise the charging equipment and store the charging connector in its designated position properly.
- Close the charge port cap and the port door.

CAUTION

- If the charging connector cannot be removed after charging, try a few more unlocking attempts. If that does not work, try emergency unlocking. For the operating procedure, see the instructions in ***P96***.
- To unlock the charge port after DC charging, press the unlock button twice within three seconds for the operation to be successful.
- See the charging instructions for specific charging precautions.

REMINDER

- Do not close the charge port door when the port cap is fully open.

Smart Charging

- Smart charging encompasses the feature of scheduled charging and scheduled departure*. Scheduled charging allows you to customise the daily start time of the charging session. Scheduled departure enables you to set a desired departure time.
- You can access the setting screen either through the infotainment system or voice control: The charging mode can be set on the infotainment system or by calling the BYD Assistant. To access the setting:
  - You can access this function by touching the app Smart Charging on the infotainment system.The interface should be consistent with the actual vehicle.
  - You can access this function by infotainment system.
    - On the infotainment touchscreen, tap → Energy → Charge and Discharge.
- The charging mode can be set on the infotainment system or by calling the BYD Assistant. To access the setting:
  - To exit the Smart Charging page, tap the back button or the home button.

REMINDER

- Scheduled charging and scheduled departure can not be activated simultaneously.

Setting screen

① Reservation charging

② Charging start and end time

③ Repeat cycle

④ Settings

- The factory default setting is to charge the vehicle immediately and scheduled charging is disabled.
- To schedule a charging, toggle the switch ① on, set the start and end time ② and repeat cycle ③, and save the settings.

- After the schedule is set up successfully, if you connect the charging connector or press the power button to power off the vehicle during the charge waiting period, you will be reminded through the infotainment touchscreen that scheduled charging has been set. Switch to instant charging if needed.
- You can tap the reservation charging setting icon ④ to turn off the charging connector connected alert and power-off alert in the Reservation Charging Alert.

CAUTION

- The scheduled charging function is developed for BYD's slow AC charging equipment only. Disable this function when using non-BYD-certified slow AC charging equipment. Otherwise, scheduled or immediate charging may fail due to no response from the equipment, resulting in low SOC or even low voltage of the high-voltage battery.

REMINDER

- The instant charging option on the reminder screen is valid for the current schedule only. To cancel all schedules, toggle scheduled charging off on the corresponding setting screen.
- Scheduled charging is dedicated for BYD AC charging piles. If you need to use this function in a public charging facility, make sure it supports scheduling from the vehicle system.
- In the event of low battery, the vehicle is charged to the minimum level before scheduled charging begins. In this process,

REMINDER

the infotainment system still gives reminder messages for power-off and charging connector connection, and a related message is displayed at the lower part of the instrument cluster.

- When the scheduled charging has a long waiting time, the function will consume some power, which is a normal occurrence.
- The function is usable for AC charging connectors only. The schedule setting is invalid for DC charging. Charging begins immediately after a DC charging connector is connected.

Scheduled departure*

① Scheduled departure switch

② Scheduled departure time

③ Repeat cycle

④ Concessionary tariff hours

⑤ Switch to scheduled charging

- To schedule a charging for departure, toggle the switch ① on, set the intended departure time ②, choose from single-use, daily, or customised repeat cycle options at ③, fill out the concessionary tariff hours ④, and save the settings.
- The system optimises charging by utilizing off-peak hours, ensuring it

completes charging when the power price is lower. If the remaining charging time is longer than the remaining travel duration or the concessionary tariff hours, the vehicle initiates immediate charging to maximise the amount of energy it can acquire.

- To schedule a charging for departure, toggle the switch ① on, set the intended departure time ②, choose from single-use, daily, or customised repeat cycle options at ③, fill out the concessionary tariff hours ④, and save the settings.
- The system optimises charging by utilizing off-peak hours, ensuring it completes charging when the power price is lower. If the remaining charging time is longer than the remaining travel duration or the concessionary tariff hours, the vehicle initiates immediate charging to maximise the amount of energy it can acquire.
- The preheating function ensures the battery performs well in low-temperature conditions, ready for optimal performance.
- The intelligent cabin temperature control pre-cools or warms the cabin, ahead of the scheduled departure, ensuring a cozy environment.
- Tap ⑤ to switch to scheduled charging.

REMINDER

- When the SOC reaches a critically low level, the vehicle is charged to a minimum level before scheduled charging begins.
- Ensuring full charge, if not complete after the concessionary tariff hours, the vehicle continues charging until it is fully charged.

REMINDER

- When the vehicle is powered on, low-temperature battery preheating and cabin temperature control are deactivated, but the concessionary tariff hours are still in effect.
- If the current time exceeds the scheduled departure time, both battery preheating and cabin temperature control are deactivated.
- Battery preheating and cabin temperature control incur a temporary battery usage.
- Battery preheating and cabin temperature control are only available when the SOC is above 40%.
- The vehicle's power will increase while waiting for the reservation charging. It is normal for long waiting to result in a reduction of the vehicle's power and driving range.

Intelligent Charging

- When the high-voltage battery is sufficient and the low-voltage battery is tested low by the system, the high-voltage battery would be triggered and charge the low-voltage battery through high-voltage battery.

REMINDER

- When the vehicle is stored for a long time, the intelligent charging function may be activated, which is normal and not a vehicle failure.
- Power for intelligent charging comes from the high-voltage battery pack, so it is normal that

REMINDER

an SOC decrease is noticed when the vehicle is powered on.

Charge Preheating*

- High-voltage battery preheating is designed to shorten the DC charging time in low temperatures.
- You can set the battery preheating on the infotainment touchscreen. The charging mode can be set on the infotainment system or by calling the BYD Assistant. To access the setting:
  - Enter the battery preheating interface by the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → Energy → Charging and Discharging.
- Enable or disable battery preheating in this screen.

REMINDER

- This function is disabled by factory default.
- This function turns off automatically when battery temperature reaches appropriate range and needs to be turned on next time.
- Charge preheating cannot be used during charging.

Discharging Instructions

- This vehicle is equipped with AC external discharging function: vehicle to load (V2L) function.
- This vehicle is equipped with DC external discharging function: DC V2L function. The DC discharging voltage meets DC150V-450V standard and the max discharging power is 10kw.

REMINDER

- The VOTL function is recommended only when SOC is high.
- The V2L function is restricted when the vehicle SOC is low.
- When the vehicle is powered off, the static power consumption of the vehicle will increase if the V2L connection device is connected for an extended period without any output. Therefore, removing the discharging/charging connector when the device is not used is recommended.

CAUTION

- For precautions concerning use of the discharge connection device, refer to the charging equipment precautions in Charging Precautions.
- Before discharging, confirm the vehicle SOC and estimate the remaining driving range.
- Before V2L discharging, ensure that the load is turned off.
- V2L discharging device must meet EVPS-004: 2014 standard and V2H discharging device must meet EVPS-002: 2014 or EVPS-002: 2018 standard.
- Do not pull out the charging device when discharging. Make sure to pull out the device after the discharging device stops working.

WARNING

- Do not touch any metal terminal of the discharging socket or the vehicle charge port during discharging.
- Stop using immediately if there are any abnormalities such as peculiar smell and smoke.
- See Charging Instructions for discharging safety warnings.
- Store the product in a cool and dry place when it is not in use.
- When discharging, do not place the equipment in the boot, under the front of the vehicle, or near the tyres.
- When using the equipment, prevent it from getting rolled over by the vehicle, dropped, or trampled on.
- Never drop the equipment or pull it directly by its cable. Take caution when moving the equipment.
- Never use the charging equipment if the power strip cable becomes soft, the charging connector cable is worn out, the insulation layer is cracked, or any other damage occurs.
- Never use the equipment when the discharging connector or power strip is disconnected or broken, or when there is any sign of surface damage.

V2L External Discharging

1. Starting discharging

- Before discharging, disarm the anti-theft alarm system.
- Unlock the charge port door, and then open the port door and cap.
- Check before discharging:
  - Ensure that the vehicle SOC is at least 15%.
  - Ensure the V2L connecting device casing is not cracked, and its plug is free from rust or obstructions.
  - Ensure that there is no water or foreign material inside the charge port and that metal terminals are not damaged and free from rust or corrosion.
  - Should not discharge if the above second or third condition is found; otherwise, short circuit or electric shock so caused could lead to personal injury.
- Connect the discharge connection device:
  - Connect the V2L discharging equipment to the charge port and confirm that it is connected in place.
  - After the switch button on the discharging socket is pressed, the socket indicator stays on (red), indicating that the socket can be used normally.
- Discharging starts:
  - After the connection is made, discharge begins and respective information is displayed on the instrument cluster.

2. Stopping discharging

- Stop discharging:
  - Disconnect the load.
- Disconnect the discharge connection device:
  - With the vehicle unlocked, remove the connector from the charge port.

- Close the charge port cap and the port door (see instructions for Mode 2 charging).
- Organise the equipment:
  - Store the equipment properly when discharging is complete.

V2H Exterior Discharging Instructions*

- When using V2H device to charge, the vehicle stops charging when SOC is 100%, then V2H can be used to discharge.
- When using V2H device to discharge, the vehicle stops discharging when SOC is 15%, then V2H can be used to charge.
- The V2H system allows switching between charging and discharging modes.
- The V2H discharging operation is the same as V2L discharging.
- The V2H charging operation is the same as charging with a DC charging pile.
- For details, please refer to the V2H device operation manual.

Charge Port Anti-theft Lock

- In order to prevent the charging connector from being stolen, the vehicle charge port is anti-theft with the charging port immobilizer system. The charging port immobiliser system is disabled by default. To enable it, go to the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → Energy → Charging/Discharging.
- When the immobilizer is activated, the charging connector will lock if charging connector is connected and the four doors, hood and trunk lid are locked. To disconnect the connector, unlock the vehicle first.

Unlocking

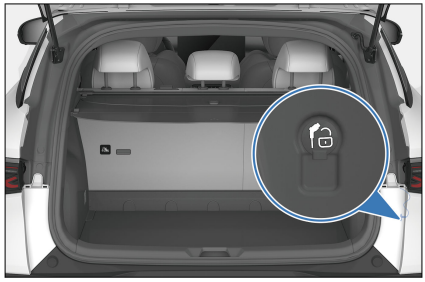
- When the anti-theft mode of the charge port is enabled and disabled, the charging connector is locked during charging. Unlock the vehicle in the following ways:
  - When the vehicle is being charged with the ignition off, press the unlock button on the smart key to unlock.
  - Press the microswitch next to the exterior handle of the driver's side door to unlock (with the smart key nearby).
  - Press the window control switches on the driver's side door to unlock.

⚠ CAUTION

- Unlock the vehicle to deactivate the anti-theft lock before pulling out the charging connector. The connector has to be pulled out within 30 seconds, or the port will re-lock.

Emergency Unlocking of Charge Port

- When charging connector cannot be unplugged due to failure of the anti-theft lock, try to unlock the charge port manually.
- DC charge port (AC-DC integrated charge port):
  - Open the boot. There is an emergency cable for the charging connector on the right side panel inside the boot.
  - Unlock the charging connector by unlocking the emergency cable latch and pulling the emergency cable;
  - Put the cap back after the connector is pulled out.



REMINDER

- In the event of abnormality or function failure, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.

Driving Range Display Settings*

- The range display mode can be set to improve driving experience. The default setting is standard mode.
- The corresponding settings are accessible on the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → Audio & Display → Instrument → Range Display Mode.
  - Standard mode: displays the driving range based on the result of comprehensive working condition test.
  - Dynamic mode: displays the estimated driving range based on the available battery power and current average energy consumption.
- The set driving range display mode is memorised by the system. When the vehicle is powered off and then on, the display mode set last time will be maintained.

REMINDER

- When the dynamic driving range display mode is set:
  - The driving range that is displayed after a full charge may vary, depending on calculations of the energy consumed the last time the vehicle is used.
  - The driving range actually displayed will be adjusted based on the state of the vehicle's air conditioner, the driving mode selected, and the driver's driving habits, so as to match the vehicle's actual driving range.

Energy Regeneration Settings

- During the driving, energy is recovered through regenerative brakes when the vehicle decelerates. For higher efficiency, do not accelerate or decelerate the vehicle unnecessarily.
- The regenerative braking intensity can be set with the regenerative mode button or on the infotainment touchscreen.
  - Standard: When the accelerator pedal is released, the motor controller recovers energy in the standard level, and the vehicle deceleration is in the standard level.
  - High: When the accelerator pedal is released, the motor controller recovers more energy, and the vehicle deceleration is high.
- The corresponding settings are accessible in the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → Energy → Energy Manager → Regenerative Braking.

- You can select the regeneration intensity based on the deceleration sense when releasing the accelerator pedal. Different deceleration senses deliver different driving experiences.
- The set regenerative braking intensity will be memorised. When the vehicle is powered off and then on, the regenerative braking mode set last time will be maintained.

REMINDER

- Do not set the regeneration intensity when driving at high speed. This may obstruct the control of the vehicle, resulting in accidents.
- The power of the whole vehicle is weaker at low battery level than that at high battery level.

Batteries

High-Voltage Battery

- The vehicle is powered by a high-voltage battery that can be charged and discharged repeatedly. The high-voltage battery is charged by an external power source or through energy recovery when the vehicle brakes or coasts.
- The high-voltage battery is located under the vehicle floor, so be careful and slow down to avoid bumping when driving on bumpy or uneven roads. If bumping occurs, go to a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for maintenance.

Battery Properties

- It is normal that vehicle performance is affected by battery electrochemical properties and self-protection and varies to some extent in the following conditions:
- When SOC is high, the regenerative braking performance may decline.
- The vehicle switches to trickle charging mode at high SOC. If the charging time is prolonged, the estimated remaining charging time displayed on the instrument cluster may not be accurate.
- When SOC is low, the acceleration performance may decline.
- When the high-voltage battery is low, V2L is unavailable. Charge the battery promptly.
- At high or low temperatures, it is normal that the charging and discharging capabilities of the high-voltage battery decline, and the charging time is prolonged. For fast charging, high-power charging equipment is recommended. Power performance may also decline under extreme temperatures.
- When charging in low temperatures, the temperature control system can significantly improve charging capability. For details, see Charging Precautions.
- When the vehicle is used at low temperatures, the battery's temperature control system will start heating the battery as appropriate to ensure the driving power and discharging performance and improve your driving experience. When the vehicle is driven over short distances, heating may be ineffective, which increases power consumption and decreases driving range.
- Usable capacity of the high-voltage battery is lower in cold weather and reduces as the temperature decreases. If the vehicle with high

battery level is charged at low temperatures, the SOC may quickly jump to 100%.

- When the high-voltage battery is normal, the driving range of the vehicle varies with the following factors:
  - Driving habit: For example, the range in frequent acceleration or deceleration is shorter than that at constant speeds, and the range is shorter when driving at high speeds than when at low speeds.
  - Road conditions: For example, the range driven in rough conditions or on long slopes is shorter than that in normal conditions and on even roads.
  - Temperature: The driving range at low temperatures is shorter than that at ambient temperatures.
  - Use of electric equipment: For example, the range driven with A/C on is shorter than that with A/C off.
- The available battery capacity decreases as the vehicle is used over time.

Battery Usage Tips

- It is recommended to use the vehicle at temperatures between -10°C to 40°C. When SOC is low, timely charge the vehicle to ensure enough driving range and good acceleration performance.
- When the refrigerator is set to a low temperature, the battery temperature may be lower. It is recommended to drive for a while to allow the battery temperature to rise before charging. After prolonged high-speed driving, the battery temperature may be higher, which may also limit the charging power.
- To ensure long term performance, avoid driving in extreme temperatures for over 24 hours.
- In low ambient temperatures, if the vehicle must be stored for a long time, it can be placed in an underground garage or other warmer area to reduce loss of battery heat, maintaining vehicle performance.
- Frequent and sudden acceleration or deceleration should be avoided. Drive the vehicle on flat and dry roads. When necessary, turn off high-power equipment such as A/C or adjust the A/C temperature to reduce power consumption of such devices and increase the driving range.
- When the vehicle is used for the first time or after a long idle period, the SOC displayed on the instrument cluster may not be correct. It is recommended to fully charge the vehicle first.
- For optimal battery performance, it is recommended to fully charge the vehicle at a regular basis (at least once a week), and fully charge it from low battery (SOC <10%) once every three to six months.
- Under extreme working conditions (such as frequent sudden acceleration/ deceleration) that cause battery overheating, if the temperature of high-voltage battery is excessively high, it is normal for discharging capability to decrease gradually. If the battery temperature keeps rising, the fault warning light lights up on the instrument cluster. In that case, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.
- When the battery SOC increases or decreases abnormally, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for inspection.

WARNING

In the event of an emergency or accident, be aware of the following warnings:

- To avoid personal injury, do not touch the high-voltage battery directly.
- Please contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider as soon as possible.
- If the high-voltage battery is damaged and leaking fluid, avoid any contact with the fluid. If it comes into contact with skin or eyes, rinse immediately with plenty of water, and seek immediate medical attention.
- If the vehicle catches fire, use dedicated fire extinguishers instead of water-based fire extinguishers.

CAUTION

- To ensure safety of the high-voltage battery, stop the vehicle away from flammable and explosive materials, ignition sources and various hazardous chemicals.
- The available battery capacity decreases as the vehicle is used over time.
- Prolonged exposure to heat sources and direct sunlight reduce the service life of the high-voltage battery.
- When the vehicle is not to be operated for an extended period (over seven days), it is recommended that the battery SOC should be kept at 40%-60% to prolong its service life. When the vehicle is not to be operated for over three months, the high-voltage battery must be fully charged and then discharged to 40%-60% every three months. Otherwise, over-discharge may lead to battery performance degradation or even damage. Any vehicle fault or damage so caused will not be warranted.
- As the high-voltage battery is arranged at the bottom of the vehicle, careful driving is recommended in case of bumpy roads.
- If there is a collision with the high-voltage battery, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider immediately for maintenance.
- No one is allowed to enter the vehicle when the battery pack needs to be repaired.

Recycling the High-Voltage Battery

How to scrap an NEV:

1. Take the vehicle to the BYD recycling service provider that will assess the residual value of the high-voltage battery.
2. Take the assessed vehicle to the recycling organisation to disassemble the high-voltage battery.
3. Take the battery to the recycling service provider which will buy back the battery.

WARNING

- New energy car owners have the responsibility and obligation to hand over waste high-voltage

WARNING

batteries to the recycling service outlet. Anyone who hands over a used high-voltage battery to any other organisation or individual, or removes/disassembles a high-voltage battery without authorisation, shall be liable for any environmental pollution or safety incident so caused.

Low-Voltage Battery

- Battery working modes include "Normal", "Sleep", "Ultra-low Power", "Low-Voltage Protection", etc. The purpose is to protect the battery cell from damage. If the vehicle system is in good condition, the vehicle switches between these modes automatically, having no effect on your use of the vehicle.
- To prevent the SOC of the low-voltage battery becoming too low, the intelligent charging function is triggered automatically when conditions are met (ignition off, high-voltage battery discharging allowed, and low-voltage battery level below the design value).
- When the intelligent charging function is triggered, the low-voltage battery is charged through the high-voltage battery. Therefore, it is normal that the SOC or the pure-electric driving range displayed on the cluster decreases, when the vehicle is started after being idle.
- If smart charging fails, the low-voltage battery may cut off the vehicle's power supply. If you find before use that the vehicle is not powered, try to activate the low-voltage battery by pressing the driver's door microswitch continuously, and immediately power on the vehicle to charge the low-voltage battery. It is recommended to charge it for more than one hour.

REMINDER

- The low-voltage battery contains relays. Thus, it is normal that relay operating sounds may be emitted from the battery.
- The low-voltage battery shall be charged with professional charging tools, and shall not be removed for recharging without permission.
- Do not jump-start the vehicle with another fuel vehicle, as this may damage the low-voltage battery.
- The low-voltage battery is a battery on low-voltage platform that is different from an ordinary lead-acid battery. Please read the instructions for use in this manual in detail.
- The low-voltage battery contains a power manager. To prevent damage to the battery or injury, do not disassemble or repair the battery without authorisation.
- The low-voltage battery needs to communicate with the vehicle for normal use, so it is important to connect its connector and wiring harness correctly.

Waking up the Vehicle from Low SOC

Wake-up by the driver's door microswitch

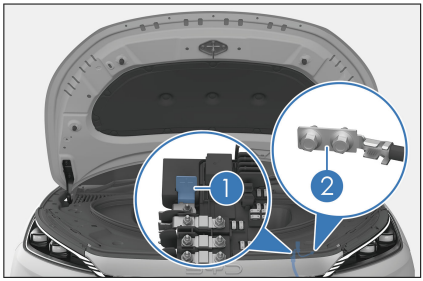
- The low-voltage battery features the dormant/wake-up function. The low-voltage battery may have entered a dormant state after long-term parking. In that case, the vehicle cannot be located or unlocked with the smart key. To wake up the vehicle, hold the

smart key close to the driver's door and press the microswitch on the door. When unlocked, the vehicle can be used as normal. If these actions cannot wake up the vehicle, the low-voltage battery may have been exhausted.

Wake-up by jump start*

When the vehicle cannot be woken up and unlocked by the driver's door microswitch, use a 12 V power supply to start the vehicle by two specially designed cables for the jump start.

- The jump start can only be carried out through the special interface of the under-bonnet PDB. The connection terminals for the jump start in the under-bonnet PDB are shown in the figure.
  - Positive pole ①
  - Negative terminal ②



WARNING

- Never jump start another vehicle. This may damage the low-voltage battery.
- If the low-voltage battery is too low or the battery fails, jump starting may be required. Carefully read and strictly follow the jump starting instructions in this manual.
- The low-voltage battery contains an intelligent control module.

WARNING

To prevent battery damage, do not disassemble or damage this battery, except in an emergency.

- Disconnect the negative terminal of the low-voltage battery before performing parts replacement and vehicle repairs.
- Do not clean the low-voltage battery with water, but wipe it with a cloth instead.

CAUTION

- It is recommended that jump starting be performed under professional guidance due to the limited operating space and electrical risks in the under-bonnet PDB area.

Usage Precautions

Break-in Period

- If the powertrain is hard to start or frequently stops turning, inspect the vehicle immediately.
- If the powertrain makes any abnormal sounds, stop the vehicle for inspection.
- If the powertrain has severe coolant and oil leakage, stop the vehicle for inspection.
- The powertrain needs break-in. This should preferably be done within the first 3,221 miles(2,000 km) in economic mode. Steady driving instead of high-speed driving is recommended. The following practices effectively prolong vehicle service life:

- Avoid flooring the accelerator pedal when starting and driving the vehicle.
- Avoid speeding.
- Do not maintain a high or low speed for too long.
- Do not use the vehicle to tow other vehicles within the first 3,221 miles(2,000 km) of mileage.

- Do not use the vehicle to tow other vehicles within the first 3,221 miles(2,000 km) of mileage.
- Do not make non-approved modifications. Contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider to install the towing kit and related software updates. BYD does not assume any responsibility for injuries or damage caused by non-approved modifications.

Trailer Towing*

- The vehicle can tow a trailer only when equipped with towing function.

The towing capacity depends on various factors such as vehicle specifications, loads, road conditions, and trailer specifications. The total towing weight must not exceed the limits below:

Item	Parameter	Comment
Maximum towing capacity (braked)	1500 kg	Maximum towing capacity when towing a tailer
Maximum towing capacity (unbraked)	750kg	Maximum towing capacity when the trailer is unbraked
Maximum vertical load	75 kg(unbraked) 150 kg(braked)	Maximum vertical load on ball joint

1. The maximum towing capacity equals the total trailer weight, which includes all cargo and additional equipment.

2. Maximum vertical load refers to the downward pressure exerted by the weight of the trailer on the trailer hitch when the vehicle and the trailer are stationary.

- To tow a trailer, adjust the tyre pressure to accommodate additional loads. Keep front tyres and rear tyres inflated to 270 kPa.
- Please observe applicable local laws and regulations regarding towing. For driving safety, avoid speeding and overloading.
- For towing, the technically permissible maximum mass on the rear axle may be exceeded by no more than 15% and the technically permissible laden mass of the vehicle may be exceeded by no more than 100 kg. In these instances, the vehicle speed must not exceed 62 mph (100 km/h) and the rear tyre pressure must be at least 0.2 bar (20 kPa) above the tyre pressure recommended for normal use.
- Towing other vehicles will have an adverse impact on the vehicle, including maneuverability, performance, braking, endurance,

economic driving or power consumption.

- BYD does not assume any responsibility for damage or injuries resulting from towing a trailer, or from failure to comply with the proper guidelines. Damage caused by towing a trailer is not covered by the warranty.
- For detailed towing instructions, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.

WARNING

- The tow bar is for towing trailers only. Do not use it to get unstuck or tow trapped vehicles to prevent vehicle damage and even personal injuries.

Driving Safety Precautions

No Drunk Driving

Even a small amount of alcohol can reduce a driver's ability to respond to traffic condition changes. The higher the level of alcohol, the less responsive the driver will be. Therefore, never drive while under the influence.

No Speeding

Speeding is a major cause of fatal accidents. Faster speeds generally entail higher risk. Therefore, maintain a speed safe for the road traffic conditions.

Keeping the Vehicle Safe for Driving

Tyre bursts and mechanical faults are extremely dangerous. To reduce the possibility of such faults, frequently check the vehicle's condition, and regularly complete the specified inspections.

CAUTION

- Any driver must possess a driver's license before driving a vehicle.
- Do not drive when fatigued.
- Always follow the traffic regulations when driving a vehicle.
- During driving, please focus on driving, and avoid activity unrelated to driving (such as making / receiving phone calls and adjusting buttons).

Vehicle Use Suggestions

Suggestions for prolonging the battery usage:

- When the vehicle is not to be operated for an extended period (over seven days), it is recommended that the battery SOC should be kept at 40%-60%, or it will reduce high-voltage battery service life.
- When the vehicle is not to be operated for over three months, the high-voltage battery must be fully charged and then discharged to 40%-60%. Otherwise, over-discharge may lead to battery performance degradation or even damage. Any vehicle fault or damage so caused will not be warranted.
- During operation of the vehicle, if the instrument cluster displays the pure electric driving mileage as 0, it indicates the battery SOC is low. In this case, charge the high-voltage battery in time and avoid operating the vehicle with low SOC for a long time.
- For optimal battery performance, use a charging connector to fully charge the battery regularly, and the recommended frequency is once a week at least.

- To maintain long-term performance, avoid continuously exposing the vehicle to an environment with a temperature above 60°C or below -30°C for over 24 hours.
- If the tray dented inward or there is scarification under the battery package tray, it is suggested to check at a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.
- During operation of the vehicle, avoid repeated rapid acceleration or deceleration whenever possible.
- During operation of the vehicle, avoid operating the vehicle continuously for a long time whenever possible; otherwise, the excessively high battery temperature will affect vehicle performance.
- If the instrument cluster malfunctions when driving, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for inspection as soon as possible.
- When the high-voltage battery temperature is high, the vehicle performance will be limited to some extent. In this case, stop the vehicle and wait until the temperature drops before operating.

REMINDER

- If the meter drops to 0, the battery must be recharged. If it is not recharged within 7 days, the battery may suffer permanent damage. Such damage is not covered by BYD warranty terms.
- Driving range depends on many factors, such as the vehicle's available power, vehicle age (current battery life), weather, temperature, road conditions and driving habits. Compared with under normal temperatures, the pure-electric driving range is somewhat reduced and power performance will also be affected in low or high temperature environments.

REMINDER

Saving Energy and Extending Vehicle Service Life

- Saving energy is simple and easy, and it helps prolong the vehicle's service life.
- Here are some tips for saving energy and repair cost:

1. Regenerative braking setting:

- The vehicle is provided with an energy regeneration function. To set the energy regeneration intensity, operate the regenerative braking mode button or go to the infotainment touchscreen. In high energy recovery mode, more energy is recovered during vehicle braking and coasting. Please set to suit to your driving habits.

2. Maintaining constant speed:

- Constant speeds save energy. Sudden acceleration, sharp turns and emergency braking increase consumption.
- Keep a constant speed according to traffic conditions. Additional energy is consumed each time the accelerator is pushed.
- Acceleration should be gradual. Avoid sudden startup, acceleration, or deceleration.
- Prevent emergency braking, and subsequent brake wear, by keeping an appropriate distance from vehicles

ahead, and paying attention to traffic lights.

- Congested roads increase energy consumption.
- Keep moderate speeds in motorways. The higher the speed, the higher the consumption. Maintaining vehicle speed within the economical speed range can save power.

3. Reducing load:

- Consumption is higher when air conditioning is used. Turn off the A/C to reduce power consumption. When outside temperatures are moderate, use fresh air mode.
- Do not overload the vehicle unnecessarily. Excessive weights will add the load of vehicle, increasing energy consumption.

4. Other tips:

- Make sure tyre pressure is correct. Low tyre pressure increases energy consumption and wear.
- Keep front wheels properly aligned, avoid driving into curbstones, and drive slowly in rough terrain. Misalignment of the front wheels not only increases tyre wear, but also increases load on the powertrain and power consumption.
- Keep the bottom of the vehicle clean and mud free. This not only reduces the weight of the vehicle body, but also prevents corrosion.

REMINDER

- Do not coast in neutral gear.

Carrying Luggage

- This vehicle has multiple storage spaces. Overloading or improper accommodation may affect maneuverability, stability and normal operation of the vehicle, and reduce its safety.
- The glove box, storage boxes on interior trim panels and seatback pockets are designed for small and light objects, while the boot for large and heavy objects.
- Long items can be loaded by folding the rear seat backrests. Overloading or improper accommodation may affect maneuverability, stability and normal operation of the vehicle, and reduce its safety.
- Make sure the vehicle's total load (vehicle + passengers + luggage) remains within the specified maximum weight.

WARNING

- Overloading and improper accommodation may affect stability and vehicle control, which may lead to accidents.
- Observe the maximum weight limit and other loading guidelines in this manual.
- Do not carry highly magnetic items, as they might interfere in the vehicle's normal operations.

Carrying Luggage in the Passenger Area

- All items that could be thrown inwards and thus injure occupants in case of a collision must be properly placed and secured.
- Do not place any objects on the inner side of rear windscreen. Otherwise, these objects will block the driver's line of sight and will be thrown here and there inside the vehicle in case of collision.

- Ensure that objects placed on the floor behind the front seat do not roll under the seat, so as to avoid affecting the driver's ability to control the pedals or normal seat adjustment. Do not stack items to a height taller than the front seats' seatbacks.
- Make sure the glove box is always closed while driving. If the glove box is open, the occupant's knees may be injured in case of a collision or an emergency stop.

REMINDER

- Do not pile up toys in the vehicle, as this may affect driving safety and present a hazard to the children, especially in case of emergency braking or collision.

Loading the Boot

- Place luggage evenly in the boot. Put heavier items at the bottom and as far in as possible.
- Secure items with ropes or straps so that they will not move while driving. Do not stack items to a height taller than seatbacks.
- For boot strapping or fastening supplies, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.

Roof Rack*

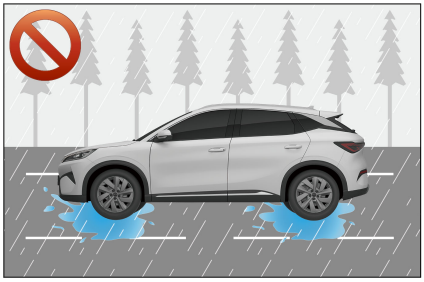
- Storing luggage on the roof rack will increase overall energy consumption and change the way the vehicle drives and handles.
- Do not open the sunroof with luggage on the roof rack, or you may risk damaging the sunroof and other components with the beam or the luggage.
- When installing the roof rack, please read and follow the manufacturer's instructions.
- Try to load the roof rack evenly and keep the centre of gravity low. Loads on the roof rack elevate the overall centre of gravity, which might alter your driving experience.
- When driving a heavily loaded vehicle, take extra precautions, drive slowly, and increase your following distance.
- The maximum recommended load evenly distributed over the beam is: 165 lb (75 kg).

CAUTION

- Luggage must not be put on the roof metal sheet directly. The roof metal sheet is not designed for loading.
- Use the roof rack properly and fasten the luggage on the beam.
- Make sure the luggage is securely fastened on the roof rack before driving and during parking.

Wading into Water

- Check water depth - it must not exceed the vehicle's lower edge before driving into flooded areas.
- If crossing a flooded area is necessary, turn off the air conditioner and keep acceleration steady to slowly cross over.



- Never stop, back up, or turn off the vehicle in flooded areas.
- After crossing over, press the brake pedal several times to dry out the disks and recover brake performance.
- Do not wade into water unless necessary.

WARNING

- The presence of water or mud in the braking system may delay brake response and extend braking distance.
- Carefully apply any wet brake, and remove ice or water on it.
- Avoid emergency braking as far as possible after driving through any waterlogged road section.
- The motor will be seriously damaged if it is submerged when crossing a flooded area. Such damaged is not covered by the vehicle's warranty
- After the vehicle drives through waterlogged road sections, vehicle components, such as drive system, driving system and automotive electric system may also be damaged seriously. Such damage is not covered by the vehicle's warranty either.
- Be sure to find a sheltered place when charging the vehicle on rainy days. If the vehicle is immersed in water or wades through water over the doorsill, which may cause water ingress in high-voltage components, promptly contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for testing and troubleshooting.
- Do not drive the vehicle on roads where the depth of accumulated water exceeds half of the tyres.

Influence of water ingress in high-voltage components:

- Water getting into high-voltage components, which are electronic devices, may not be fully dried out by any means.
- Water ingress seriously compromises insulation of high-voltage components, and conductive substances in water may lead to short circuit of high-voltage components or such risk in the entyre high-voltage system. This significantly affects the safety and service performance of the vehicle.
- The reduced ingress protection rating and voltage withstanding performance due to water in high-voltage components pose a high safety risk.

Fire Prevention

To prevent vehicle fires in a timely and effective manner, pay attention to the following during use of the vehicle:

- No flammable or explosive items are allowed in the vehicle.
  - Temperatures may reach 60-70°C in a vehicle exposed to direct sunlight in

summer. Therefore, flammable and explosive items, such as lighters, cleaning agents and perfumes stored in the vehicle can cause a fire or even explosion easily.

- Make sure cigarettes are thoroughly put out.
  - Smoking is harmful to your health and may cause a fire. Cigarettes that not thoroughly put out may cause a fire.
- It is recommended to go to a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for regular vehicle checks.
  - Check vehicle wiring, connections, wiring harnesses, insulation, and fixed position regularly. Deal with identified problems promptly.
- Do not refit vehicle wiring or add any unauthorised electrical appliance.
  - The addition of extra electrical appliances, such as high-power audio systems, light fixtures, etc., may overload and overheat the wiring harness and increase the risk of fire.
  - Improper refitting of electrical appliances or wiring may cause a fire due to contact resistance and abnormal heating. Fuses or other replacement wires in excess of relevant electrical rating are strictly prohibited.
- Select a proper parking location.
  - When parking the vehicle, try to avoid sun exposure.
  - When the vehicle is parked, especially in summer, do check whether there are any flammables such as dry grasses, dead woods, leaves or wheat straws under the vehicle. If any flammable materials are found under the vehicle, clear in time to prevent a fire.
  - When the vehicle is running, avoid driving on the road sections piled up with flammables such as ry grasses, dead woods, leaves or wheat straws. If the road cannot be avoided, stop the vehicle to check whether any flammables are carried along after passing such road sections.
- Keep a lightweight fire extinguisher in the vehicle and know how to use it.
  - To ensure vehicle safety, a fire extinguisher should be equipped in the vehicle, and be checked and replaced regularly. Also, you should familiarise yourself with use of the fire extinguisher in case of an accident.
- Disconnect the negative cable of the low-voltage battery when the vehicle is being serviced or repaired.
- In the event of a fire in the vehicle, take effective measures in a timely and calm manner to minimise any losses:
  - Fires typically show initial warning signs, such as abnormal noises and odours in the vehicle body. When abnormal conditions are found, turn off and stop the vehicle immediately. It is best to park the vehicle in a windproof place, and then put out the fire using the fire extinguisher in the vehicle.
  - Call the fire alarm in time, and also dial the insurance company's reporting number and ask the company to come to the fire site for handling.
  - Look for the ignition point. If the cabin is smoking, do not open the bonnet immediately. (Doing so will let a large amount of air in and cause fire spreading. There is limited comburent in the cabin. Keeping the bonnet closed can control the fire so that the fire can be easily put out). Point the on-board fire extinguisher

at the ignition point from the bonnet gap to put the fire out, or seek help from the passing cars. If you can borrow more fire extinguishers, open the bonnet to put it out when you cannot see any flame from outside.

- If the fire brigade is involved, ask for a duty performance certificate and a description of fire cause.
- After occurrence of the accident, contact the insurance company for post-event handling in a timely manner.

REMINDER

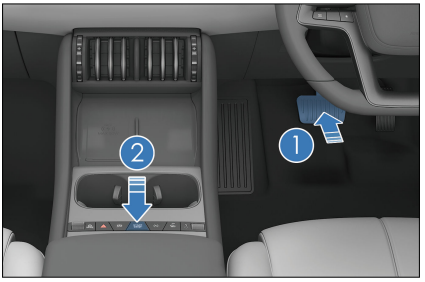
- In order to mitigate losses in the event of an accident, the purchase of commercial insurance (fire loss, theft, etc.) is recommended.

Starting and Driving

Starting the Vehicle

In normal cases, start the vehicle as below:

- Carry a valid smart key with you, depress the brake pedal ① and press the START/STOP button ② at the same time, and then the OK indicator on the instrument cluster illuminates, indicating that the vehicle is ready for driving.
- Shift to Drive or Reverse, and then the electronic parking brake will be released automatically. Do not start driving until hearing a motor release sound from the electronic parking brake system.



The vehicle cannot power on when

- The vehicle cannot power on when:
  - After you press the START/STOP button, the smart key warning light turns on, a beep sounds, and the message "No key detected" is displayed on the instrument cluster. This means that the key is not in the vehicle or cannot be detected due to interference.
  - The key is somewhere unsuitable for detection, such as on the floor, in the cup holder, boot, or storage compartment.
- Pressing the START/STOP button may not enable the start function due to:
  - If the electronic smart key does not work, the smart key system warning light flashes and the message "Low key battery" is displayed on the instrument cluster, the battery of the key may be exhausted. Please replace the battery of the electronic smart key as soon as possible.
  - Except for causes mentioned above, the smart access and start system also fails to work normally under some conditions due to different service environments. See Smart Access and Start System for details.

Starting the vehicle in emergencies:

- Engage the parking brake firmly.

- Turn off all unnecessary lights and accessories.
- Shift to Park or Neutral.
- Switch the ignition off.
- The electronic smart key is in the vehicle.
- Press and hold the smart key start button for over 15 seconds.

CAUTION

- Do not start the vehicle for more than 20 seconds at a time, or the wiring system will overheat.

Remote Start Function*

Before starting

1. The power mode is "OFF".
2. Shift to Park or Neutral.
3. The vehicle speed is below 3 mph (5 km/h).

Remote Start with the Electronic Smart Key

1. Press and hold the remote start/stop button on the electronic smart key for two seconds to start the vehicle. Turn signals will flash three times after it is started.
2. If there is no valid operation within 10 minutes after remote start, the vehicle stops and powers off, and turn signals flash twice.

3. After the vehicle is started, pressing and holding the remote start/stop button on the smart key for two seconds switches the ignition off. The turn signals then flash twice.

Auto Power On/Off

- To enable or disable auto power on/off, go to the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → Vehicle → Locks → Comfort Driving.
- When auto power on is enabled, power on the vehicle in the following two methods:
  - Method 1: Unlock with a valid smart key, microswitch, NFC digital key*, bluetooth* or cloud service*, and then open the driver's door for the first time.
  - Method 2: Carry a valid smart key, NFC digital key*, bluetooth* or cloud service*, and press the brake pedal. The vehicle is ready to drive.
- When auto power off is enabled, power off the vehicle in the following two methods:
  - Method 1: Press the START/STOP button.
  - Method 2: Shift to Park, and lock from the outside with a valid smart key, microswitch or NFC digital key*.

REMINDER

- Auto power on is operational only when the driver's door is opened for the first time after unlocking.
- If you unlock and access the vehicle by opening a door other than the driver's door, after you powering on and then off, opening the driver's door does not power on the vehicle.
- When auto power on is disabled, the brake pedal and the START/STOP button must be pressed to power on the vehicle.
- Auto power on is not operational when the bonnet is open.
- To prevent false triggering, Bluetooth and cloud service can only lock but not power off the vehicle.
- In the case of auto power on by opening the driver's door, locking from the outside with a valid smart key, microswitch, or NFC key automatically powers off the vehicle. There is no need to press the START/STOP button.

Driving

Safety Check before Driving

It is advisable to carry out a safety check before driving a long distance, which ensures your driving safety and enhances your driving experience. The vehicle can also be taken to a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for inspection.

Exterior

- Tyres: Check tyre pressure and carefully inspect tyres for any cut, damage, foreign material, anomaly, and excessive wear.
- Lug nuts: Ensure all nuts are fitted and tightened.
- Leaks: After the vehicle has been stationary for some time, check for fluid deposits beneath it. These may indicate a leak of coolant or other liquids. (It is, however, normal for a small pool of water to form, caused by the air conditioning system.)
- Lighting: Make sure headlights, position lights, turn signals and all other lights are working normally. Check headlight intensity.

Interior

- Seat belts: Check whether seat belts can be properly fastened. Verify that seat belts are not worn or scratched.
- Instrument cluster: Particularly, verify that maintenance indicator, instrument cluster lighting, and defroster work properly.
- Brake pedal: Verify that there is enough space for the brake pedal to work.
- Low-voltage battery and cables: Check connectors for any corrosion or looseness and any cracks in the low-voltage battery housing.

In the engine compartment

- Spare fuses: Verify that spare fuses of all rated charges in the fuse box are available.
- Coolant level: Verify that coolant level is correct.

Check after starting

- Instrument cluster: Confirm that the maintenance indicator and the speedometer work normally.
- Brakes: In a safe area, drive the vehicle straight, hold the steering wheel tightly, decelerate and apply the

brake. Verify that the vehicle maintains a straight direction.

- Other abnormalities: Check for loose parts, leaks, and unusual noises.

If everything is OK, just enjoy your driving.

REMINDER

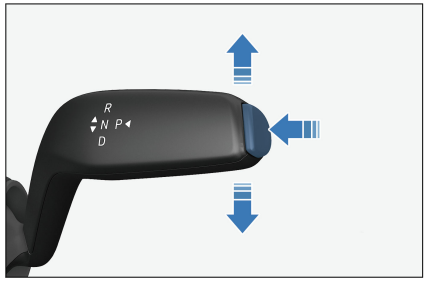
- Do not pile up toys in the vehicle, as they may affect driving safety, especially in case of emergency braking or collision.

Preparations before Driving

- Check the surroundings before getting into the vehicle.
- Adjust seat position, seatback angle, cushion height, headrest height, and the steering wheel angle and height.
- Adjust interior rearview mirror and side mirrors.
- Close all doors.
- Fasten the seat belts.

Gear Shift Controls

- The gear position of the gear shift controls is marked on the gearshift lever, move the lever up or down to switch between "R", "N", and "D" gears. Press the right-side button to shift into "P" gear.
- After starting the vehicle, press the brake pedal and push the gear shift lever up or down to shift from "P" to other gears.
- "P" gear is for parking. Press this button to park the vehicle.



WARNING

- To prevent damaging the transmission, press the "P" button only after the vehicle has completely stopped.

- "R": Reverse, used only when the vehicle has come to a complete stop.
- "N": Neutral, used for temporary stop. Under all circumstances, always shift to Park before the driver gets out.
- "D": Drive, shift to Drive gear to drive the vehicle normally.
- If the shift is successful, the lever returns to its middle position after it is released.
- Turn the ignition on before shifting into Drive.
- Shifting out of Park or into Drive requires pressing the brake pedal. For details, see the prompt message on the instrument cluster.

WARNING

- If the motor is turned off and the vehicle travels for a long time after it is in Neutral, the transmission may be severely damaged due to lack of lubrication.
- When the engine or motor is running and the vehicle is in the

WARNING

"R"/"D" gear, be sure to stop the vehicle by depressing the brake pedal, as the actuator can still transmit force and the vehicle can travel slowly even in its idle condition.

- If you want to shift a gear while driving forward, do not step on the accelerator pedal to prevent accidents.
- In order to prevent accidents, never shift to Reverse or press the "P" button while the vehicle is moving.
- Never coast downhill in Neutral or Park.
- To prevent the vehicle from moving unintentionally, press the "P" gear button after parking. If the electronic parking brake indicator light does not illuminate after switching to "P", manually activate the electronic parking brake via the infotainment touchscreen to ensure safety.

Electronic Parking Brake (EPB)

EPB Switch

- Be sure to engage theElectronic Parking Brake (EPB)every time before parking and leaving the vehicle.

Engaging EPB Manually

Pull down the quick settings menu to turn on the EPB switch. Set EPB on the "EPB" option on infotainment touchscreen, when you press the brake pedal and EPB is released, EPB applies an appropriate parking force, the indicator Ⓟ on the instrument cluster flashes and then is steady on, indicating that EPB is engaged. In addition, a text prompt "EPB activated" is displayed.

CAUTION

- When Ⓟ flashes, EPB is working. If the vehicle is on a slope, do not release the brake pedal until Ⓟ is steady on. Otherwise the vehicle may move down.

Engaging EPB Automatically

Engaging EPB automatically is designed to improve vehicle safety. Excessive reliance on or frequent use of the function is not recommended. For safety reasons, make sure that the vehicle is shifted into Park and the EPB is engaged before getting off.

Switching the ignition off

- When the ignition is switched off, EPB engages automatically and Ⓟ lights up on the instrument cluster.

Shifting into Park

- Press the brake pedal to stop the vehicle steadily and shift into Park. EPB is engaged automatically. Do not release the brake pedal until Ⓟ on the instrument cluster stops flashing and becomes steady on and the "EPB ON" message is displayed.
- Press and hold the brake pedal to stop the vehicle steadily. If the driver's door is opened in Drive or Reverse, do not release the brake pedal until Ⓟ on the instrument cluster stops flashing and becomes steady on and the "EPB ON" message is displayed.

CAUTION

- Do not release the brake pedal early in the process, especially when the vehicle is stopped on a slope, to prevent it from rolling.
- When the vehicle needs to be towed due to breakdown, or the brake pedal needs to be replaced for repairing, you can toggle on Electronic Parking Brake Trailer Mode* (EPB Trailer Mode) in the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → Vehicle → Driving Control.

Automatic EPB Release upon Vehicle Start

Releasing by shifting gear

- With the vehicle parked, start the vehicle, press and hold the brake pedal, and shift from Park or Neutral into a driving gear such as Drive or Reverse. EPB is released automatically, the indicator goes off, and the "EPB released" message is displayed.

CAUTION

- Be sure to always press and hold the brake pedal when shifting gears. Release the pedal only after the intended gear is displayed on the instrument cluster.
- The EPB system conducts power-up self-check within several seconds after the vehicle is started. In this process, the system does not respond to any function.

Releasing by pressing the accelerator pedal

- When the vehicle has been started and the gear is in a driving gear such as Drive or Reverse, engage EPB on the infotainment touchscreen, then simply press the accelerator pedal slowly to a certain degree. EPB is released automatically and Ⓟ turns off with the message "EPB released" displayed.

Emergency Braking When Brake Pedal Fails

- If braking fails or is blocked, continue to press the "P" button for over two seconds for emergency braking.

WARNING

- As the EPB cannot go beyond the physical limit of road adhesion, activating the emergency brake function may result in vehicle drift, sideslip or deflection when the vehicle passes through bends or dangerous/heavy-traffic road sections, or when the vehicle is driven under severe weather conditions. Be careful and do not cause any accident.

CAUTION

- For safety considerations, refrain from using the "P" button for emergency braking in normal driving. If the brake pedal fails or is blocked, use the emergency braking function while you can always keep the vehicle under control and drive normally.

EPB Trailer Mode*

The EPB trailer mode is mainly set for the automatical EPB engagement function with the ignition off. When the vehicle needs to be powered off for being towed, or when it malfunctions, you can switch on the mode to exit parking with EPB.

- You can set the EPB trailer mode on the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → Drive → Overhaul.
- EPB trailer mode can be activated when all the following conditions are met:
  - The vehicle is in Park.
  - Press the brake pedal.
  - The charging connector is not connected, and the vehicle is not being charged.

CAUTION

- When the activating conditions of EPB trailer mode are not met, a corresponding prompt message displays on the infotainment touchscreen.
- After activating the trailer mode, the corresponding screen always displays on the infotainment touchscreen unless you tap to exit the trailer mode.
- When the vehicle is on a slope and you need to enable the EPB trailer mode, do not release the brake pedal during the process to avoid vehicle slipping.

- EPB trailer mode can exit when any of the following conditions is met:
  - Disable the trailer mode on the infotainment touchscreen.
  - Press the "P" button.
  - Charging starts after the charging connector is connected.

EPB Operating Sound

- EPB motor noises can be heard while the EPB is being engaged or released.
- If there is a burning smell or unusual noises after emergency braking is activated, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider immediately.

WARNING

- To prevent the vehicle from moving, do not the replace EPB with the gearshift when parking. EPB must be used instead, and the vehicle must be in Park.
- To prevent a serious accident, never allow any passenger in the vehicle to operate the EPB switch when the vehicle is running.
- When the EPB switch is pulled or released, the brake pedal must be pressed to prevent the vehicle from moving, and the subsequent locking of the gearshift that occurs because EPB cannot provide a sufficient parking force.

EPB System Indicator

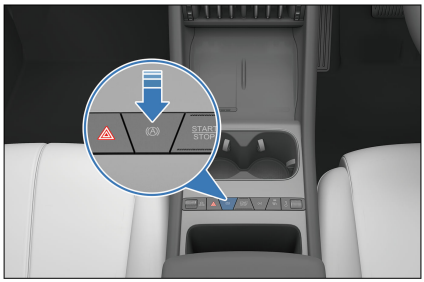
- When the vehicle is powered on, if the EPB is engaged, (P) is solid on on the instrument cluster.
- When the vehicle is powered off, if the EPB is engaged, (P) on the instrument cluster turns on and then turns off in several seconds.
- When the vehicle is powered on, the EPB system starts self-check. (!) turns on and then off in several seconds on the instrument cluster. If it does not, the EPB or braking system may be faulty. It is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection immediately.

Automatic Vehicle Hold (AVH)

Automatic vehicle hold (AVH): The automatic vehicle hold (AVH) is activated automatically when the moving vehicle needs to be stationary for longer periods of time, such as in traffic jams on a slope or waiting at traffic lights.

AVH standby

- When the ignition is on, press the AVH switch to enable the function. The AVH standby indicator Ⓐ is displayed on the instrument cluster.
- Press the AVH switch again to disable AVH.



AVH activated

- When the AVH standby indicator Ⓐ is solid on, press and hold the brake pedal until the vehicle stops (vehicle speed reduces to zero) to activate AVH. At this time, the vehicle is in AVH state with Ⓐ displayed on the instrument cluster.

CAUTION

- For AVH to be activated, all of the follow conditions must be met:
  - The driver's seat belt is fastened and the doors are closed.
  - Intelligent power braking system and electronic park brake (EPB) systems are normal.
- Pressing the accelerator pedal, shifting into Park, or engaging the EPB manually can make AVH exit to the standby status.
- The AVH is off by factory default.

AVH running

- The AVH runs normally when it is activated, brake lights and the high-mount brake light are on, and the AVH indicator Ⓐ on the instrument cluster is solid on.
- The AVH function exits to the standby mode after the vehicle stops for 10 minutes, with the AVH standby indicator Ⓐ on and vehicle in Park.
  - To activate AVH function, shift into Drive to enable the vehicle to move normally, and then press and hold the brake pedal until the vehicle stops (vehicle speed reduces to zero).

AVH exits

- When the Automatic Hold (AVH) function is operating normally, the vehicle will exit the Automatic Hold function and the EPB will automatically engage if the driver performs any of the following actions:
  - Opening the driver's door.
  - Unlocking the driver's seat belt.
  - The gear status is in Drive when the vehicle stops, and EPB is enabled.
  - Pressing the AVH switch to disable AVH when releasing the brake pedal.

WARNING

- Opening the driver’ s main door will trigger the EPB to engage simultaneously, and the gear selector will automatically shift to ‘P’ (Park).
- In addition to opening the driver’ s main door, the gear selector will only automatically shift to ‘P’ (Park) after the EPB has fully engaged (indicated by the EPB indicator light remaining steadily illuminated). If the accelerator pedal is depressed while the EPB is still engaging (i.e., during the period when the EPB indicator light is flashing), the gear will remain unchanged and will not automatically shift to ‘P’ .

AVH suppressed

- Shifting into Reverse, AVH goes into slow-moving condition. When the vehicle is reversing (R gear) or travelling (shift into D gear from R gear) at a low speed, AVH cannot be activated and stays in standby status to improve vehicle motion.
- To exit slow-moving mode, press the AVH switch or drive at a speed above 6 mph (10 km/h). The AVH function is on standby and can be activated normally.

Driving Precautions

- Drive slowly and carefully along gravel roads. To prevent tyre damage, do not drive over sharp-edged obstacles.
- Slow down on bumpy roads. Otherwise, the impact may seriously damage wheels.
- Avoid driving through flooded areas as much as possible.
- Slow down when driving against strong winds.
- Cleaning the vehicle or driving through deep water may wet brakes. To keep brakes dry, drive carefully and press the brake pedal gently.
- Drive carefully on slippery roads, such as roads covered in ice, snow or sand, or surfaces such as wet ceramic tiles or epoxy resin. Avoid parking on slopes to prevent vehicle sliding.

REMINDER

- The high-voltage battery is located in the vehicle's chassis. Make sure to avoid bumping when driving.
- Before driving, make sure that EPB is fully released and that the EPB indicator light is off.
- Do not leave the vehicle when the drive motor is running.
- Do not rest your feet on the brake pedal and accelerator pedal for a long time during driving. Otherwise, this will cause overheating, wear and waste of electric energy.
- Slow down when driving down long steep slopes, and avoid pressing the brake pedal too frequently to prevent disc overheating, which affects normal brake operations.
- Be careful when accelerating or braking on slippery roads. Quick acceleration or sudden braking will cause the vehicle to skid or deviate.
- To avoid traffic accidents and life-threatening injuries, make sure no occupants stick their heads or hands out of any window

REMINDER

when the vehicle is running. Stay vigilant, especially when any child is in the vehicle.

- Large amounts of water entering the engine compartment can cause damage to the power system and electrical components.

WARNING

- The driver shall ensure the riding safety of all passengers in the vehicle, guide them to correctly use vehicle features, and prevent children and other passengers operating in a wrong way.

Winter Driving Precautions

1. Make sure the coolant is freeze-proof.
   - Use coolant of the same type as the one used originally. Fill up coolant into the cooling system based on ambient temperature.
   - Improper coolant damages the cooling system.
2. Check batteries and cables conditions.
   - The low-voltage battery's capacity is lower in cold weather, so they must be fully charged when winter comes.
3. Avoid door frost.
   - Spray some deicing agent or glycerin in the lock hole to prevent freezing.
4. Use anti-freeze washer fluid.
   - These can be found in the BYD authorised dealer or service provider and the auto parts stores.
   - The water and anti-freeze ratio must conform to manufacturer instructions.

CAUTION

- Use special washer fluid to prevent paint damage.

5. Prevent ice and snow from going under the fender.
   - Steering is difficult with ice or snow accumulating under the fenders. When driving in cold weather, stop from time to time and check for snow and ice under the fenders.
6. Have emergency tools or items available as prevention for difficult road conditions.
   - It is advisable to have snow chains, window scraper, bags of sand and salt, flashing signal, a shovel and connecting cables in the vehicle.

- Snow chains are only for emergencies or areas where they are permitted by laws.
- Snow chains should be installed on rear wheels. Be careful when driving the vehicle installed with snow chains on snow-covered roads. Some snow chains may damage the tyres, wheels, suspension, or vehicle body. It is recommended to use thin snow chains with a thickness or diameter no greater than 10 mm to ensure adequate clearance between the tyres and other components inside the wheel well.
- Read the component assembly drawings and other instructions provided by the snow chain manufacturer carefully.
- Before purchasing and installing snow chains, consult a BYD authorised dealer or service provider where your vehicle was purchased.

- In order to minimise wear of tyres and snow chains, do not travel with snow chains on roads without snow.

REMINDER

- Driving speed must not exceed 18 mph (30 km/h) or the speed limit specified by the snow chain manufacturer.
- Drive carefully, and pay attention to bumps, potholes, and sharp turns that can cause the vehicle to bounce.
- For vehicles with snow chains, avoid sharp turns or braking with locked wheels, and slow down the vehicle before entering a curve to avoid accidents due to loss of control.
- Install snow chains symmetrically on both sides and removed them immediately after the vehicle is leaving snowy or muddy roads.
- If abnormal noise is heard from the snow chain, it indicates that the chain may contact vehicle components such as suspension, body or brake lines. In this case, stop the vehicle immediately for inspection.
- Install snow chains after turning off the vehicle and engaging the parking brake firmly. Do not Install snow chains when the tyre pressure is insufficient
- When installing the snow chain, park the vehicle on a flat surface away from traffic, turn on the hazard warning lights, and place a warning triangle at the rear of the vehicle.

Winter Tyres

- Winter tyres provide better traction on snowy roads. The special rubber tread pattern makes the tyres less affected by low temperatures and delivers excellent braking performance to improve driving safety.

Usage tips

- It is recommended to use winter tyres in snow or ice conditions or at temperatures below 44.67°F (7 °C). When temperatures rise to above 44.67°F (7 °C), install summer or all-season tyres instead for driving safety and better performance.
- Winter tyres must be the same size, load index, and speed rating as those originally provided by BYD.
- Winter tyres must have adequate tread depth. Tyres with a tread depth less than 0.16 in. (4 mm) do not perform well in winter conditions.
- Winter or summer tyres are designed for specific acceleration conditions. Use them in the corresponding seasons to avoid poor traction or braking performance.
- Do not exceed the speed rating of winter tyres, which is relatively low.
- After installing winter tyres, inflate them to the design pressures.

Driving Assistance

Driver Assist System

- The functions of driving assistance system are divided into two categories: driving assist, safety assist.
  - Driving assist: It includes two functions with varying levels of

intelligence: adaptive cruise control (ACC) and intelligent cruise control (ICC), designed to assist the driver in driving.

- Safety assist: It includes front, side, and rear safety assistance to support the driver in safe driving.

WARNING

- Before using the driving assistance system, the driver is required to carefully read, understand, and comply with the relevant agreements and technical documents. Learn and master the essential knowledge of using the system, including but not limited to: the user guide, general system limitations and functions' descriptions, scope of application, methods of use and precautions. During system use, strict compliance with the operating instructions is required to ensure safe and effective operation. BYD assumes no liability for property damage, personal injury, or other consequences caused by the driver's non-compliance with this manual, related agreements and documents, unless otherwise mandated by law.
- The driving assistance system is designed to assist the driver, not to replace their focused attention and accurate judgement. When using the system, the driver must comply with local traffic laws and regulations, always hold the steering wheel, keep alert and monitor the surrounding environment for potential hazards. Intervene or take control timely when necessary to ensure safe driving. Otherwise, it may result in accidents, property damage, or personal injury.
- The terms and expressions related to vehicle control in this manual are designed to clearly and concisely communicate key points during system usage to drivers. During system operation, the driver remains the sole operator of the vehicle. It is required to continuously monitor the vehicle, system status, and external environment and respond as necessary. In the event of system limitations or unexpected scenarios, immediate manual intervention and control are mandatory to ensure driving safety. Otherwise, it may lead to accidents, even property damage and personal injury.
- Drivers shall comply with local laws and regulations to legally use the functions of the driving assistance system, and shall not add functions, Apps, or tools to the system for any improper or illegal acts, nor shall they illegally collect and use personal information and geographic information data. BYD shall not bear any responsibility for any illegal activities resulting from the user's misuse, improper use, or unauthorised modification of the system functions or services. BYD reserves the right to temporarily disable system functions or even terminate services provided to the user. Additionally, BYD reserves the right to retain data related to the user's illegal activities for use as evidence by authorised agencies with legal procedures.

⚠ CAUTION

- The driver assistance system is only designed to assist the driver in driving, not an automatic or unmanned driving system. The driving assistance system is designed to assist the driver, not to replace their focused attention and accurate judgement. Although the system can provide a certain level of assistance, it cannot fully address all scenarios that may arise due to traffic, road conditions, visibility, adverse weather, or other environmental changes during driving. Therefore, the driver is solely responsible for all driving decisions and must ensure compliance with local traffic laws at all times.

Sensors of the Driver Assistance System

The vehicle is equipped with sensors such as MmWave radars and cameras.

Sensor cleaning and maintenance

- Ensure that all radars and cameras are clean and the front windscreen is clean and free from frost or fog. Dirt, obstructions, or attachments on the radar or camera surface, or dirt, frost, or fog on the front windscreen may affect the system working.
- When a radar or camera is blocked or dirty, the instrument or infotainment touchscreen may display a message prompt. Clean and maintain accordingly. Contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider when necessary.
- Common radar or camera occlusion or dirty scenes and corresponding treatment suggestions:
  - If the radar or camera lens housing is covered with ice or frost, it is recommended to melt it using warm water or a antifreeze-containing cleaning solution. After melting, wipe the surface dry with a clean optical cloth, cotton cloth, or velvet cloth until no visible residue remains.
  - If the radar or camera lens housing surface is adhered with dust, mud spots (including muddy water stains), bird droppings, or other contaminants, it is recommended to rinse with running water or windscreen-specific cleaning solution until the dirt and adhered contaminants soften or detach. Afterward, wipe the surface clean with a dry optical cloth, cotton cloth, or velvet cloth until no visible residue remains.
  - If the radar or camera lens housing surface has moisture or condensation, it is recommended to wipe it clean with a dry optical cloth, cotton cloth, or velvet cloth until no visible water stains remain.
  - When driving in environments with poor lighting or obstructions, such as single-sided overpasses, tunnels, deserts, grasslands, or snowy areas, it is recommended to drive the vehicle away from the current environment so as to resolve the sensoring faults due to obstructions, with no further actions required.
- Cleaning and maintenance tips:
  - When the windscreen fogs up or there is a risk of fogging, it is recommended to turn on the windscreen defrosting function to prevent fogging or frosting on the windscreen.
  - Using a neutral cleaning agent (e.g., soap water) to clean stains on the radar surface is recommended. After

cleaning, rinse the radar housing surface with clean water first, and then wipe it dry with a clean lint-free cloth.

- Do not apply films, wax, non-OEM paint, vehicle wraps, or coatings to the radar housing area, as these actions may impair radar sensing performance.
- Do not use a cleaning brush to clean the radar or camera, as sand or debris mixed into the brush may cause scratches on the lens housing and casing.
- Do not use hot water to remove ice or snow from the lens housing, as it may cause the lens housing to crack.
- Do not wipe the radar cover forcefully to avoid damaging the optical coating of the lens housing.
- Do not use metal or other hard objects to scrape the contaminants or ice and snow on the surface of the lens housing and casing to avoid damage.
- Avoid spraying directly on the radars and cameras when washing the vehicle body with high-pressure water.
- The mmWave radars are installed in the front and rear bumpers respectively. Therefore, keep the bumpers clean in order to avoid infuluencing radar performance. Do not paint, add body kits, or install metal or alloy (including electroplating operating) decorative parts on the bumper without permission.

Sensor Limitations

- Limitations of radar and camera include but are not limited to:
  - Radars and cameras may have detection blind spots when perceiving the surrounding environment.
  - Radars and cameras may detect falsely such as incorrectly identifying the distance or speed of objects, or detecting objects when none are present.
  - Radars and cameras may miss a target, such as partially or completely failing to identify vehicles, pedestrians, animals, or other obstacles.
- Many factors can affect sensor performance, leading to false detection or missed detection. Carefully read the limitations of the driver assistance system.

WARNING

- It is strictly prohibited to use strong alkali, strong acid, ammonia-containing cleaning solvent, bleaching agent, cement cleaner, asphalt cleaning agent, glue remover, polishing agent or paint remover to clean radar and camera lens housings and casings.
- Contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider if a radar or camera needs to be replaced. Do not install or use parts not approved by BYD or make modifications not approved by BYD.
- If the front windscreen, bumper need to be replaced, contact tBYD authorised dealer or service provider to ensure proper disposal of radars and cameras.
- If the area where a sensor (radar or camera) is installed is damaged or collided with, causing the sensors to become misaligned or damaged, the system may fail

WARNING

to work. In that case, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider to check.

- After a radar or camera is replaced, calibrate in time according to this manual. An unsuccessful calibration may affect the proper operation of the system.
- Failure to observe this precaution could impair driving safety, resulting in an accident and even property loss or personal injuries.

General Limitations of the Driver Assistance System

Driver assistance features employee multi-sensor fusion algorithm. Various factors can impair their performance. These include but are not limited to device issues (including incorrect operations), environment of use (such as weather and road conditions), and influence of vehicles around and other road users. In specific:

device issues (including operator-related reasons)

- The mmWave radars or cameras are not yet calibrated or damaged or covered, for example, by ice, water, frost, mud, or dust.
- There are strongly reflective objects around, such as highway traffic signs, metal railings, and water reflection on the road.
- Make sure to go to a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for professional calibration and checkup of the system in any of the following situations:
  - The front camera or front windscreen has been removed.
  - Wheel alignment has been carried out.
  - Scrapes, collisions, or other impacts have led to sensor or vehicle structural error, especially sensor displacement due to deformation or damage of the bumper, front windscreen, frame, or other components.
- Trailer hitches or loaded objects protrude from the vehicle.
- Interference or obstruction is caused by bike rack or other non-standard accessories installed at the rear of the vehicle.
- Obstructions is caused by excessive paint (paint thickness changes) applied or adhesive products (such as tape, stickers, and car covers) attached.
- Do not use steering wheel cover on vehicles equipped with capacitive sensors. They could give rise to malfunctions.
- Cases where system performance may be reduced include but are not limited to:
  - Excessive wear of the brake pads or braking system malfunction.
  - Improperly inflated or worn out tyres.
  - Unqualified tyres installed.
  - Snow chains installed.
  - Use of a small spare tyre or tyre repair kit.
  - The vehicle is heavily loaded.

Environment of use

- Radars may have a transient failure from detection limitations if the vehicle runs in circular ramps or tunnels or under other special conditions for an extended period. The

function will be recovered after the vehicle is away from such conditions.

- Reaching or leaving a curve may delay or disturb target selection. causing the vehicle to brake late or fail to decelerate as expected.
- On roads with sharp curves (winding roads, for example) or too curvy roads, the vehicle ahead may be out of sensor detection for seconds, so ACC may accelerate.
- The system may not be able to correctly identify stationary or slow-moving objects, such as vehicles, the end of traffic, toll booths, bicycles, motorcycles, or pedestrians. This means a risk of collision and requires constant attention on the surroundings.
- The system cannot be activated in tow, snow, mud, sand, terrain, and other special driving modes*.
- Detection may be affected or delayed in some environments. If the radar cross section of the target (a bicycle, three-wheelers, four-wheeler, or motorised bicycle, or motorcycle, for example) is too small, the system may not be able to establish its distance, resulting in either late or no response to those vehicles.
- The vehicle is running under extreme weather, such as rain, snow, fog, and smog, or on a icy and slippery curve.
- Visibility is poor due to heavy smoke, splashing water, dust, or exhaust emissions from nearby vehicles.
- Lane lines are excessively worn, blocked, or covered, have disappeared, are overlapping old ones, have been adjusted in road constructions or change rapidly.
- The vehicle is in intense light (for example, oncoming headlights or direct sunlight) or low-light conditions (for example, dawn, dusk, and nighttime).
- The vehicle experiences extreme lighting contrast, for example, at the tunnel entrance or exit.
- The environment is in extremely hot or cold.
- Weight or width limit signs not in standard size as per national regulations may be mistaken for speed limit signs.
- If a speed limit sign is unclear or distorted, inclined, reflective, partly blocked or covered, the camera may be unable to recognise the sign completely or clearly.
- The vehicle is in complex road conditions, such as steep slopes, sharp curves, continuous curves, narrow winding roads, narrow lanes, off-road roads, rough roads, roads with grooves or potholes (e.g., manholes), roads with a drop-off or cliff on one side, raised road shoulders, excessively wide lanes, construction zones (e.g., areas with traffic cones), or areas involving on-ramps, off-ramps, intersections, or toll gates.
- The vehicle is in poor road conditions, such as slippery or soft surfaces (such as water accumulation, ice, snow accumulation, muddy roads, gravel roads, or sandy roads), blurred lane markings, or damaged road signs.

Vehicles around and other road users

- Pedestrians are obscured by other objects.
- Pedestrian outlines are indistinguishable from the surroundings.
- Close-proximity non-motorised vehicles (including but not limited to two-wheelers, three-wheelers, bicycles, motorcycles, trolleys,

strollers, and shopping carts), animals, and pedestrians (especially children)

- Upturned vehicles, vehicles in extremely abnormal sizes, and vehicles with irregular shapes, such as flatbed trucks, engineering vehicles, road maintenance vehicles, and vehicles carrying reinforced concrete pipes or other external cargo
- Irregularly shaped strange obstacles nearby, such as transparent stools, chairs, tables, water barriers, and traffic cones, which are difficult for the system to identify
- Vehicles with large areas of monotonous background colours
- Complex traffics, including vehicles, pedestrians, cyclists, animals, or other obstacles appearing suddenly and approaching rapidly, as well as settings such as on-ramps, off-ramps, intersections, or toll stations

WARNING

- If the sensors are displaced or damaged after scrapes or collisions (including minor impacts), do not use driver assistance features. Instead, contact an authorised BYD service centre for inspection and servicing.
- For safety considerations, do not use driver assistance features in bad weather or in poor lighting conditions.
- For safety considerations, do not deliberately test driver assistance features, for example, by waiting for system reaction to emergencies without manual intervention.
- Read carefully all instructions to avoid feature deactivation or danger incurred by incorrect operations. For example, the acceleration request overrides emergency braking if the accelerator paddle is depressed with AEB on.
- Because of its limitations, the driver assistance system may give improper warnings or intervention while monitoring the surroundings. It may also raise false alarms as a result of operation misinterpretation. Stay alert.
- Because the system cannot accurately detect and react to emergency in the surroundings, you must be always ready to intervene or take control of the vehicle (by deceleration, braking, steering or so) whenever necessary. Failure to observe precautions above could result in an accident or personal injuries.

Driving Assist

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

- Adaptive cruise control (ACC), an extension of traditional cruise control, uses sensors on a front mmWave radar or front camera to detect the relative distance and speed of the vehicle ahead, so as to maintain the set cruise speed or time-base following distance. The vehicle travels at the target cruise speed when the front space is clear, and adjusts speed according to the set time-based following distance once a front vehicle is detected.

CAUTION

- ACC is enabled by default and cannot be manually disabled. The driver can activate ACC using the buttons on the steering wheel. See “ACC Activation Methods" for details.
- ACC only serves to assist in cruise control, and your active steering wheel manipulation remains necessary for ensuring the correct travelling direction of the vehicle.

Function Status

- With the ACC function enabled: If the ACC activation conditions are met, the driver can activate the ACC function by the steering wheel button.Otherwise, the man-machine interface will prompt that the function is unavailable if the driver tries to activate the ACC function.
- ACC activated: it allows the vehicle to cruise at the target speed or automatically adjust the distance from the vehicle ahead. It will be overridden to respond to driver's acceleration action if the accelerator pedal is pressed with the ACC activated, and will continue when the pedal is released.
- ACC failure: At this time, the system is not available. If the driver tries to activate the ACC function, the man-machine interface will prompt that the function is unavailable.

Function Status	Indicator	Display Status	Meaning
With the ACC function enabled:		Indicator on	ACC has been turned on but not activated yet in the current ignition cycle.
With the ACC function enabled:		Indicator on	ACC has been turned on, can be activated, and had already been activated in the current ignition cycle. The cruise speed before last ACC deactivation is displayed in the indicator icon.
Active		Indicator on	ACC is active. The cruise speed set is displayed in the indicator icon.
Unable to be activated/faulty		Indicator on	ACC is not available when it is faulty.

Activation Conditions

- EPB is not engaged.
- The vehicle is in Drive.
- The vehicle does not slide backwards.
- The boot, bonnet, and all doors are closed.
- The driver seat belt is fastened.
- The electronic stability control (ESC) system is on.
- The vehicle speed is not greater than 93 mph (150 km/h).

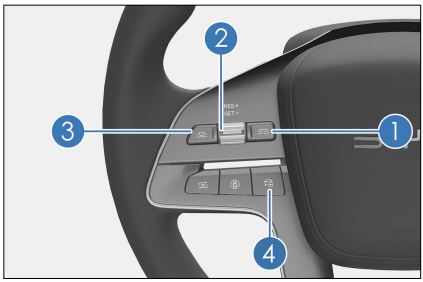
- If the vehicle is stationary (zero speed), stepping on the brake pedal or engaging EPB activates ACC.
- If the vehicle is travelling (speed greater than 0), ACC can be activated when the brake pedal is not stepped on.
- There is no vehicle network communication failure prompt on the instrument cluster.
- The AEB function is not activated.

CAUTION

- ACC cannot be activated with ESC off.
- The ACC is suitable for highways and roads in good conditions, rather than complex urban or meandering roads.

Activation Methods

- When (30) is displayed on the instrument cluster, it indicates that ACC can be activated as follows.
  - For the first time of ACC use in the current ignition cycle, only pressing button ④ works.
  - Otherwise, push button ② up to activate ACC.



- Press Button ④ to activate the feature, the system set to cruise at the current speed. If it is below 18 mph(30 km/h), the target cruise speed is set to 18 mph(30 km/h). If is activated by pushing up button ②, the target cruise speed is set to the speed before last deactivation.

WARNING

- The system cannot automatically adjust speed to road and driving conditions. You are supposed to set target speed as per local traffic laws and regulations and respond to changes in a timely manner to ensure driving safety.

Setting following distance

- Buttons ① and ③ increases and decreases the time-based following distance. At all levels, the faster the vehicle, the greater the distance.
- ACC increases or decreases the time-based following distance from level 1 to 4 in sequence, and the default setting is level 3.

Cruise control

- When no front vehicle obstructing your vehicle travel is detected, ACC helps maintain the set speed.

Following

- When a front vehicle obstructing your vehicle travel is detected, ACC helps maintain a safe distance to follow and lets the vehicle speed up, slow down, brake, and start accordingly.
- On the instrument cluster, the followed vehicle in front is highlighted with blue colour. The following distance is fixed but varies with vehicle speed and the chosen following distance level. (See "Setting the time-based following distance".)
- When active, ACC helps adjust the following speed and target when the target cuts out or another vehicle cuts in and switches to cruise control

(without distance control) if no new following target appears.

Follow-to-stop/start

- Under normal driving conditions, ACC enables your vehicle to follow the vehicle ahead to start or stop:
  - ACC automatically accelerates your vehicle away from a standstill if the vehicle ahead pulls away within a short period of time.
  - If your vehicle has stopped for a longer period of time, resume motion by pressing the accelerator pedal or pushing up the②ACC cruise button as prompted.
  - ACC will be canceled and EPB engaged after the ACC system holds your vehicle at a standstill for too long. In that case, you will have to disengage EPB and press the brake pedal in order to reactivate ACC.

ACC Accelerates the Vehicle

- The acceleration rate of the ACC is linked to the selected driving mode.
  - In Sport Mode, the vehicle provides faster acceleration.
  - In Normal Mode, the vehicle provides moderate acceleration.
  - In Economic Mode, the vehicle provides smooth acceleration.

WARNING

- Be a safe and responsible driver. Set the target speed and following distance according to local road regulations and conditions and adjust in a timely manner to changes.
- ACC is unable to deal with oncoming traffics.

WARNING

- ACC may not correctly recognise the target if the front vehicle or pedestrian is too close.
- On curves, the vehicle may follow a wrong target, leading to unintended travelling speed or direction. You must stay focus and take control of the vehicle in a timely and correct manner whenever noticing such situations.
- To prevent collisions, never be over-reliant on ACC adjustment of speed and following distance to keep a correct and safe distance from the front vehicle. You are responsible for determining and keeping the safe following distance.
- You are supposed to always be alert to all possible dangers around and intervene or control the vehicle whenever necessary, for example, by slowing down, braking, or steering away as appropriate. Failure to observe this precaution could impair driving safety, resulting in an accident and even property loss or personal injuries.

Exiting ACC

- When ICC is activated and the vehicle is moving, you can deactivate the system by pressing button ④ or depressing the brake pedal. When ICC is deactivated, the system can only be exited by depressing the button ④.
- When ICC is active and the vehicle is moving, you can deactivate the system by depressing the brake pedal.

Avoid overtaking in the slow lane (also applicable for ICC)

- The function of avoiding overtaking in the slow lane is only effective when the ICC function is activated and the speed of the vehicle reaches more than about 56 mph(90 km/h).
- The driver can set the switch state of the function through central infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → ADAS → Driving Assist → Avoiding overtaking in the slow lane, and the default function of the system is off.
- When the function switch is turned on, when the vehicle is driving in the slow lane and the speed of the vehicle in the adjacent fast lane is slower than that of the vehicle, the system will automatically control the vehicle to reduce the speed and try to avoid overtaking the vehicle in the adjacent fast lane.

Deceleration on curves (also applicable for ICC)

- This feature works only with ACC active.
- To enable or disable the function, go to infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → ADAS → Safety Assist → Speed Adjustment on Curve. The function is disable by default.
- When ACC is active, the system enables the vehicle to decelerate to a proper speed before entering a bend based on the bend's radius, thereby improve driving safety and comfort.

System Limitations

- Exterior ACC sensors
  - The mmWave radar and camera are installed in the front of the vehicle. Blockage of their field of view could interfere the intended functionality. In particular, if the sensor is covered by snow completely, ACC deactivates itself and informs of this on the instrument cluster. System functionality will recover after blockage is removed and the vehicle is restarted or runs on normal roads for a while.
  - Detection may be affected or delayed in some environments. If the radar cross section of the target (a bicycle, three-wheelers, four-wheeler, or motorised bicycle, or motorcycle, for example) is too small, the system may not be able to establish its distance, resulting in either late or no response to those vehicles.
  - The front mmWave radar may have a transient failure from detection limitations if the vehicle runs in circular ramps or tunnels or under other special conditions for an extended period. The function will be recovered after the vehicle is away from such conditions.
  - The mmWave radar may malfunction or misidentify targets due to interference from other mmWave radars.
  - Metal objects, such as rail or metal plates used in road construction, may interfere with front mmWave radars, making it malfunction.
  - Detection may be affected or delayed by noises or electromagnetic waves.
  - Performance of front mmWave radar sensors and cameras may be affected by vibration or collision. It is recommended to contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.
- Reaching or leaving a curve may delay or disturb target selection. causing the ACC vehicle to brake late or fail to decelerate as expected.
- On roads with sharp curves, such as winding roads, the vehicle ahead may be out of ACC sensor detection for seconds, so ACC may accelerate.

WARNING

- ACC cannot deal with sharp, consecutive, and other complex curves, so you need to stay aware of road conditions ahead and slow down or brake in a timely manner if necessary.

- Traffic flow and surroundings must be heeded for setting and adjusting the following distance. Even with ACC properly set, it remains essential to ensure the vehicle can be brought to a full stop at any time.
- The ACC system may not be able to correctly identify stationary or slow-moving objects, such as vehicles, the end of traffic, toll booths, bicycles, motorcycles, or pedestrians. This means a risk of collision and requires constant attention on the surroundings.
- The ACC system is capable of limited braking instead of emergency braking.

WARNING

- ACC is not a collision warning or avoidance system and therefore cannot replace collision prevention warning, collision prevention brake, or other active safety assist features, which we strongly advise you to keep switched on.
- ACC cannot react to poles, bollards, and other obstacles, so you need to stay aware of road conditions ahead and slow down or brake in a timely manner if necessary.
- Never be over-reliant on ACC for full deceleration and collision prevention. You need to stay aware of road conditions ahead and slow down or brake in a timely manner if necessary.
- The vehicle may not be able to detour around front targets that risk colliding with it, especially when the target is stationary or when the vehicle is excessive.
- You are supposed to always be alert to all possible dangers around and intervene or control the vehicle whenever necessary, for example, by slowing down, braking, or steering away as appropriate. Failure to observe this precaution could impair driving safety, resulting in an accident and even property loss or personal injuries.

- ACC cannot be activated in special driving modes* such as snow.
- Situations where ACC and related features may work improperly or deactivate themselves include but are not limited to:
  - Vehicle issues (including but not limited to incorrect operations):
    - Vehicle speed is greater than 96 mph(155 km/h).
    - Any door, the bonnet, or the tailgate is open or faulty.
    - Tyre pressure is abnormal.
    - Airbags are abnormal.
    - The vehicle is in any of the following states: not in Drive, in the process of braking, hill descent system/hill hold system/ traction control system activated, colliding with or being collided by another vehicle, ignition off.

- The vehicle's chassis, braking system, traction control system, or electronic stability system malfunctions or is in need of servicing.
- The driver's seat belt is not fastened.
- The driver assistance system malfunctions or is in need of servicing.

- Environment factors (including but not limited to weather, visibility, road conditions):
  - Low visibility settings such as nighttime, rainy, snowy, or foggy days, dusty environments, lack of lighting, low-light conditions, backlighting, and glare
  - Road openings, intersections, narrow roads, and steep slopes
  - Mountain roads and rural roads
  - Waterlogged, icy, and snow-covered sections.
  - Sharp curves, serpentine curves, switchback roads, and other high-curvature turns
  - Unpaved roads such as muddy roads, gravel roads, and off-road trails
  - Presence of kerbs and other low-profile, static, or nearby obstacles
- Vehicles around and other road users (including but not limited to):
  - Congested intersections
  - Pedestrians and vehicles weaving through the intersection
  - Sudden appearance of pedestrians, cyclists, and animals previously in the blind spot
  - Sudden braking of the vehicle ahead
  - Adjacent large vehicle merging into the vehicle's lane
  - Pedestrians or other vehicles cutting in line, jaywalking or road-hogging, merging in from a sharp angle, or travelling in the wrong way
  - Stationary vehicles, upturned vehicles, and vehicles with irregular shapes, such as flatbed trucks, engineering vehicles, road maintenance vehicles, and vehicles carrying reinforced concrete pipes or other external cargo
  - Front vehicle or adjacent front vehicle with any door open or things falling off
- Other issues
  - Include but are not limited to other situations listed under general system limitations.

WARNING

- ACC is only a driver assistance feature, and cautions here include only common situations affecting its functionality. Factors associated with system performance are more than these. You are fully responsible for your driving safety and must always be aware of surroundings.
- Use ACC based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.

CAUTION

- ACC cannot be activated with ESC off.
- The ACC is suitable for highways and roads in good conditions,

CAUTION

rather than complex urban or meandering roads.

- It is the driver's responsibility to keep distance from the vehicle ahead. Set a time-based following distance compliant with the minimum requirement for the local driving environment.
- Pressing the accelerator or brake pedal while ACC is active allows you to take over the vehicle. Therefore, take caution to keep a safe distance from the vehicle ahead.
- ACC may have no or slow responses to a vehicle ahead that stops suddenly, resulting in a risk of late braking.
- In some cases, such as when the vehicle ahead is going too slow, when lane change is too fast, or when the safe distance from the vehicle ahead is too short, there is no adequate time for the system to decrease the relative speed. That is, the system may not give timely warnings in every case, which necessitates your prompt responses.
- If ACC is activated with the vehicle stationary, the system identifies any stationary obstacle ahead and keeps the vehicle still to ensure a safe startup and prevent collision. However, this function cannot identify all the obstacles, so the driver must be alert to the front obstacles or other traffic participants.
- ACC may brake the vehicle if it is too close to the adjacent lane or if the adjacent vehicle is too close too your lane.

CAUTION

- Vehicles coming into your ACC vehicle's route and within its camera detection range will be identified and reacted to as targets, which may lead to hard or late braking.
- Keep control of the vehicle if ACC cannot target the vehicle ahead (no highlighted target on the instrument cluster).
- In rare cases, while the vehicle stops as does the vehicle ahead, the system may fail to recognise the rear of the vehicle ahead, such as the rear axle of a truck with a higher chassis or vehicle bumper. This means a suitable following distance cannot be kept and you must stay alert and ready to brake at any time.
- Modifying the vehicle structure, such as lowering the chassis, may affect the ACC system.
- Do not use ACC when visibility is poor, or when driving on slopes, winding roads, or wet roads (covered in ice/snow or flooded).
- Because speed limit recognition could be misled by road conditions, always monitor the speed limit of the current road to ensure compliance with traffic laws.
- Make sure to go to a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for professional calibration and checkup of the front camera in any of the following situations:
  - The front camera or front windscreen has been removed.

CAUTION

- Wheel alignment has been carried out.
- The vehicle has experienced a collision.
- Impaired ACC performance is noticed or the instrument cluster indicates an system error.

Intelligent Cruise Control (ICC)

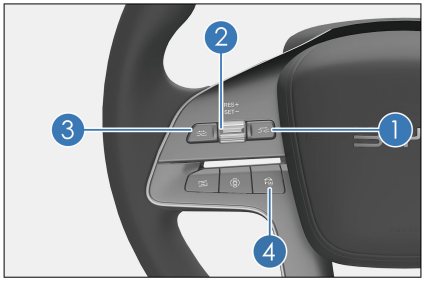
- Intelligent Cruise Control (ICC) assists the driver in keeping the vehicle within the current lane at speeds between approximately 0 and 93 mph (0-150 km/h). It is primarily intended for use on roads with clear lane markings and in good driving conditions. When using ICC, the driver must control the driving route. The driver must keep both hands on the steering wheel while the function is active and be ready to take manual control whenever necessary.
- ICC uses sensors such as radars and cameras to monitor the road ahead. Based on the detected environment, it assists the driver in controlling the steering and speed, building upon ACC functionality to keep the vehicle in its current lane.
- ICC only assists in keeping the vehicle within the current lane; it does not provide route guidance. When using ICC, the driver must always keep both hands on the steering wheel, take control when route adjustments are required, and pay attention to instrument cluster and audio alerts. The driver must be prepared to take immediate corrective action to ensure safe driving. If the driver's hands remain off the steering wheel for a certain time, a driver disengagement alert will be triggered.

ICC indicators

Indicator	Display Status	Meaning
	Indicator on	ICC available but not activated
	Indicator on	ICC activated and operating
	Indicator on	ICC unavailable due to fault

Activating ICC

- when displays on the instrument.
  ICC is available for activation
- Enable or disable AEB on the infotainment touchscreen→ ⚙ → ADAS → Driving Assist. When the vehicle is started, the system defaults to previous settings.
- When the ICC activation conditions are met, the ICC function can be activated by pressing button ④. If the activation conditions are not met (e.g., no lane lines), ACC will be activated first. Once the activation conditions are met, ICC will be automatically activated.



- displays on the instrument when ICC is successfully activated . The target speed will be shown.

Cruise control

- ICC assists the driver in keeping the vehicle centred in the lane, while supporting all ACC functions such as constant-speed cruise, following, and the adjustment of target speed and time-based following distance.

WARNING

- Be a safe and responsible driver. Set the target speed and following distance according to local regulations and conditions and adjust in a timely manner to changes.
- ICC cannot detect all potential hazards so the driver must stay aware of road conditions ahead and slow down or brake in a timely manner if necessary. Always keep both hands on the steering wheel and remain aware of the surroundings, ready to take prompt control of the vehicle and take corrective measures.
- Do not over-rely on ICC to keep the vehicle in the lane. In certain situations, such as curves, the vehicle may drift towards or across lane markings. The driver is responsible for maintaining the correct lane position.
- To ensure safe driving, always remain alert to all possible dangers around and intervene or control the vehicle whenever necessary.

Exiting ICC

- If the vehicle is not at rest, the function can be exited by pressing button ④ or by manually stepping on the brake pedal; if the vehicle is at rest, the function can only be exited by pressing button ④.

Driver disengagement alert

- If the driver's hands are removed from the steering wheel for a certain time, a driver disengagement alert will be triggered.
- After the third-level alert is triggered, ICC will automatically deactivate and slow down to a stop in the current lane, while also activating the hazard warning lights.
- The following actions can interrupt the automatic stop:
  - Turning off the hazard lights or activating a turn signal
  - Pressing the accelerator pedal while turning the steering wheel
  - Cancelling ICC using the steering wheel control button
  - Shifting to Park.
- In a single power-on cycle, the ICC function is prohibited to be activated after the three-level alarm is triggered for three times, and the system is in the punishment mechanism state. The function can be activated normally

only after the system is powered on and off again.

WARNING

- The vehicle may not stabilize immediately upon ICC activation. The driver must keep both hands on the steering wheel, stay aware of driving conditions, and be ready to take control at any time.
- Ensure surrounding conditions are safe before activating ICC. Avoid over-reliance on the system.
- The driver is supposed to always be alert to all possible dangers around and take control of the vehicle whenever necessary to ensure safe driving.
- ICC can be affected by weather conditions, lighting, and lane marking visibility. Performance degrades significantly in situations such as backlight, front light, glare, bright light, snow covered roads, and roads with heavily worn lane markings.
- Do not use the ICC on winding roads, icy or slippery curves, or under poor weather conditions such as dense fog, heavy rain, or snow, which may obstruct the forward camera's view.

CAUTION

- Activate ICC only after the vehicle is stable (steering wheel centered, vehicle aligned in lane, no sharp turns).
- ICC activation may fail when driving through intersections. Try activating the system after passing the intersection and entering a stable lane.

Intelligent Speed Limit Control (ISLC)

Function overview

- When traffic sign recognition system detects that the speed limit value is inconsistent with the ACC target cruise speed set by the user, the system will prompt the user whether to adjust the target cruising speed to comply with the speed limit When the user presses the SET- or RES + button, the target cruise speed will be adjusted to the speed limit value.
- When the system detects roundabouts, intersections, or other road signs, it will prompt the driver to adjust the ACC (Adaptive Cruise Control) target cruising speed.
- When SLF system detects that the ahead speed limit value is inconsistent with the current target cruise speed set by the user, the system will prompt the user whether to adjust the target cruising speed to comply with the ahead speed limit. When the user presses the SET- or RES + button, the target cruise speed will be adjusted to the ahead speed limit value.
- The system's operating speed range is 19-93 mph(30-150 km/h).

Function Settings

- ISLC setting: Infotainment Touchscreen → ⚙ → ADAS → Safety Assist.
  - ISLC is disabled by default.
  - When the vehicle is started, the system defaults to previous settings.
  - When TSR is disabled, ISLC also ceases to function.
  - When TSR is enabled, ISLC can be enabled or disabled depending on your needs.

CAUTION

- ISLC integrates ACC and TSR. Therefore, the function precautions of ACC and TSR must be followed, and the system limitations need to be fully understood and considered when using ISLC.

Forward Safety Assist

Forward Collision Warning (FCW)

- Forward Collision Warning (FCW) uses the front mmWave radar and the camera to detect vehicles pedestrians and cyclists ahead. When detecting a risk of collision, the system alerts the driver audibly and visually to take measures and avoid the collision risk.

Function Overview

- Safe distance warning:
  - When the vehicle runs at a speed of about 41 mph - 93 mph(65 km/h - 150km/h), the system continuously monitors the forward driving environment in real-time. If following the vehicle ahead closely in a long-time is detected, the system issues a safe distance warning to prompt the driver that the following distance is too close.
  - The indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, and a prompt is displayed to alert the driver.
- Pre-warning:
  - When the vehicle runs at a speed of about 10mph - 93mph(15 km/h - 150 km/h), the system will give a pre-alarm when it detects a collision risk between the vehicle and the target in front. The driver needs to promptly take appropriate actions to ensure safe following distance.
  - The system gives a pre-warning visually and audibly. The indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, a prompt is displayed, and the buzzer alarms.
- Emergency warning:
  - If the vehicle runs at a speed of about 10mph - 93mph(15 km/h - 150 km/h) and the driver does not respond to the pre-warning, the system will issue an emergency warning through auditory, visual, and tactile alerts. The driver needs to promptly take appropriate actions to ensure safe following distance.
  - The indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, the buzzer alarms, a prompt is displayed, and there is a short braking warning.

WARNING

- FCW is a driver assistance feature. Its activation may be afffected by factors such as vehicle speed, sensor accuracy, obstacle type, distance to the obstacle, driving environment, and system response delay, which may result in untimely warnings, missed alerts, or false alarms. FCW can not replace the driver's judgement and operation.

Function settings

- Enable or disable FCW on the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → ADAS → Safety Assist.
- The settings are defined as follows:
  - OFF: FCW is disenabled.
  - Late: FCW is enabled and issues a late warning.
  - Moderate: FCW is enabled and issues a moderate warning.

- Early: FCW is enabled and issues a early warning.

REMINDER

- The default setting is moderate.
- Default Sensitivity Setting (If the feature was not disabled during the last trip, the system retains the user’ s selected sensitivity setting. If the feature was disabled during the last trip, the system resets the sensitivity to the default value “Moderate” upon vehicle power-up).

System Limitations

- FCW may be affected or give no response in the following cases, including but not limited to:
  - Vehicles, pedestrians, or cyclists that approach from the front.
  - Vehicles, pedestrians, or cyclists that cut obliquely into the vehicle's path.
  - Vehicles, pedestrians, or cyclists in adjacent lanes.
  - Animals.
  - Non-standard vehicles, such as water trucks, box trucks, and construction vehicles.
- FCW may be affected or give no response in the following cases, including but not limited to:
  - Poor weather conditions such as rain, snow, or fog.
  - Poor visibility conditions such as nighttime, glare, or direct sunlight.
  - Dirty, hazy, damaged or blocked sensor.
  - The bonnet or boot is not closed properly or opened during driving.
  - The driver's seat belt is not fastened or it is unfastened when the vehicle is moving.
  - The driver presses the brake pedal.
  - The driver presses the accelerator pedal hard.
  - The drivers frequently switches between the accelerator and brake pedals.
  - The ESC function is disabled or ESC fault indicator is on.
  - Modifications to the vehicle, such as excessive paint thickness from repainting, application of films, adhesive tape, or decorative elements, may interfere with the performance of cameras or mmWave radars.
  - The system is in the process of starting (for example, vehicle is just powered on or restarting).
  - Scenarios listed under general system limitations.
  - The system is malfunctioning or requires servicing.
- In complex traffic situations, FCW may not be able to respond correctly to the following situations, including but not limited to:
  - Pedestrians or vehicles move too quickly into the sensor's detection range.
  - Pedestrians are obscured by other objects.
  - Pedestrian outlines indistinguishable from the surroundings.
  - Pedestrians are not detected, due to, for example, coverage by special clothing or other materials.
  - The vehicle is on a sharp curve.

- Detection may be affected or delayed in some environments. If the radar reflective cross section of the target (a bicycle, three-wheelers, four-wheelers, pedestrian, electric bicycles, motorcycle, or non-standard vehicles, for example) is too small, the system may not be able to establish its distance to the target ahead, resulting in either late or no response to the target;
- The mmWave radars may malfunction or misidentify objects due to interference from other mmWave radars.
- Detection may also be affected or delayed by noise or electromagnetic interference.

- Forward collision warning may trigger unnecessary warning for water stains on the ground, road shadows, manhole covers, iron plates or road signs.
- If the vehicle runs for a long time in special road conditions such as circular parking lot and tunnel, the front millimeter wave radar may have temporary functional failure due to the limitation of detection characteristics, and the function will be automatically restored after leaving the current special road.

WARNING

- Make sure to drive safely and observe surrounding traffic conditions. FCW is not a substitute for the driver's normal judgement and operation.
- If FCW gives an alarm, the driver must brake based on traffic conditions to decrease vehicle speed or steer away from obstacles.

WARNING

- If the vehicle travels too close to the vehicle ahead for too long, a safety distance warning will be given. If the vehicle ahead brakes suddenly, collision may be unavoidable.
- As the pedestrian protection function cannot overcome the restrictions of some physical conditions, it may not fully work within the speed range specified by the system. Therefore, the responsibility to use brakes timely and effectively always lies in the driver. Whether a warning is issued in pedestrian protection scenarios depends on the actual situation.
- In pedestrian protection scenarios, the system cannot guarantee the complete prevention of accidents and severe injuries.
- The pedestrian protection function may trigger unwanted alarms in some complex situations, for example, on curved main roads.
- There may also be unnecessary alarm intervention in case of malfunctions in the pedestrian protection system, such as angular misalignment of the radar/multi-function video controller.
- Do not try to test FCW with carton, iron plate, dummy and other objects. The system may not work properly and thus result in accidents.
- It is recommended to go to a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for professional

WARNING

calibration of the mmWave radars in case of any of the following situations:

- Dismantle the mmWave radar or front camera.
- Toe-in or rear camber has been adjusted during wheel alignment.
- The vehicle experienced a collision.
- ACC system performance has degraded or become abnormal.

- Use FCW based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.

REMINDER

- FCW cannot guarantee a warning in all cases. In complex traffic, the system cannot always clearly identify all the vehicles, pedestrians or cyclists.
- In this case, the instrument cluster display shows corresponding information (dirty surface or foreign matter covering causes blindness of the sensor); then, foreign matters on the sensor surface shall be removed as required. When the sensor is dirty or covered by foreign matter, the forward collision warning is disabled. After clearing, the forward collision warning is normal.

Automatic Emergency Braking (AEB)

- AEB uses the front mmWave radar or the camera to detect vehicles, pedestrians and cyclists ahead. When detecting a risk of serious collision, the system automatically applies braking pressure to assist in collision avoidance or impact reduction.
- When the vehicle runs at a speed of about 3 mph - 93 mph(4 km/h - 150 km/h), AEB continuously monitors the forward driving environment in real-time. When detecting a risk of collision with vehicles, pedestrians or cyclists ahead, the system automatically applies braking pressure to decelerate the vehicle.
- During emergency braking, the instrument cluster displays a braking indicator, a prompt message with animation and text is shown, and an audible alarm is triggered simultaneously.

WARNING

- AEB is a driver assistance feature not designed to prevent collisions but rather to assist the driver in avoiding or mitigating collisions.
- Braking is influenced by multiple variables, including the vehicle's speed, sensor accuracy, object type, spatial relationship to the target, system response time, braking system efficiency, and tyre status. Braking may occur incorrectly if the system misidentifies objects. AEB can not replace the driver's judgement and operation.

Function settings

- To enable or disable AEB, go to the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → ADAS → Safety Assist.

WARNING

- It is strongly recommended that not to disable the AEB function. If it is disabled, the vehicle will

WARNING

be unable to assist the driver in reducing vehicle speed or avoiding/mitigating collisions.

REMINDER

- AEB is enabled by default.
- Disabling the AEB is only effective for the current trip. The system will be enabled automatically upon vehicle restart.

System Limitations

- AEB is only activated when the vehicle speed exceeds 2.5 mph (4 km/h). This feature is designed to reduce the risk of collision but does not guarantee collision avoidance at all speeds. Please note that the system does not guarantee that it can be triggered accurately under every working condition. Please drive carefully.
- Targets that may not be responded include, but are not limited to:
  - Vehicles, pedestrians, or cyclists that approach from the front.
  - Vehicles, pedestrians, or cyclists that cut obliquely into the vehicle's path.
  - Vehicles, pedestrians, or cyclists in adjacent lanes.
  - Animals.
  - Non-standard vehicles, such as water trucks, box trucks, and construction vehicles.
- AEB may be affected or inoperative under the following conditions, including but not limited to:
  - Poor weather conditions such as rain, snow, or fog.
  - Poor visibility conditions such as nighttime, glare, or direct sunlight.
  - Poor road conditions such as pits, bumps, slippery surfaces, or steep slopes.
  - Dirty, hazy, damaged or blocked sensor.
  - The front bonnet or boot is not properly closed or is opened while driving.
  - The driver is not wearing a seat belt or has unbuckled it.
  - The driver presses the accelerator pedal hard.
  - The drivers frequently switches between the accelerator and brake pedals.
  - The ESC function is disabled or ESC fault indicator is on.
  - Modifications to the vehicle, such as excessive paint thickness from repainting, application of films, adhesive tape, or decorative elements, may interfere with the performance of cameras or mmWave radars.
  - The system is in the process of starting, for example when vehicle is just powered on or restarting.
  - Scenarios listed under general system limitations.
  - The system is malfunctioning or requires servicing.
- In complex traffic situations, AEB may not be able to respond correctly to the following situations, including but not limited to:
  - Pedestrians or vehicles move too quickly into the sensor's detection range.
  - Pedestrians are obscured by other objects.

- Pedestrian outlines are indistinguishable from the surroundings.
- Pedestrians are not detected, due to, for example, coverage by special clothing or other materials.
- The vehicle is on a sharp curve.
- Detection may be affected or delayed in some environments. If the radar reflective cross section of the target (a bicycle, three-wheelers, four-wheelers, pedestrian, electric bicycles, motorcycle, or non-standard vehicles, for example) is too small, the system may not be able to establish its distance to the target ahead, resulting in either late or no response to the target.
- The mmWave radar may malfunction or misidentify targets due to interference from other mmWave radars.
- Detection may be affected or delayed by noises or electromagnetic waves.

- System performance may be reduced in the following cases, including but not limited to:
  - Strong front bumper impact from accidents or other causes.
  - Excessive wear of the brake pads or braking system malfunction.
  - Improperly inflated or worn out tyres.
  - Unqualified tyres installed.
  - Snow chains installed.
  - Use of a small spare tyre or tyre repair kit.
  - The vehicle is heavily loaded.
  - The vehicle is in break-in period.
- AEB may trigger unnecessary braking for water stains on the ground, human silhouettes, road shadows, manhole covers, iron plates or road signs.
- If the vehicle runs for a long time in special road conditions such as circular parking lot and tunnel, the front millimeter wave radar may have temporary functional failure due to the limitation of detection characteristics, and the function will be automatically restored after leaving the current special road.
- AEB cannot be activated when the vehicle is towing a trailer or operating in special driving modes* such as tow or snow mode.
- To avoid unnecessary repeated braking, AEB will not be triggered again within tens of seconds after the initial activation.

WARNING

- Be sure to drive safely and keep eyes on the surrounding traffic conditions. Under no circumstances shall AEB be used as a substitute for the driver's judgement and operation.
- As the pedestrian protection function cannot overcome the restrictions of some physical conditions, it may not fully work within the speed range specified by the system. Therefore, the responsibility to use brakes timely and effectively always lies in the driver. Whether a braking is issued in pedestrian protection scenarios depends on the actual situation.
- In pedestrian protection scenarios, the system cannot guarantee the complete prevention of accidents and severe injuries.

WARNING

- The pedestrian protection function may trigger unwanted braking in some complex situations, for example, on curved main roads.
- There may also be unnecessary braking intervention in case of malfunctions in the pedestrian protection system, such as angular misalignment of the radar/multi-function video controller.
- Do not attempt to test the PEB system on your own using objects such as carton, iron plate, dummy, etc. The system may not work properly and thus result in accidents.
- It is recommended to go to a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for professional calibration of the mmWave radars in case of any of the following situations:
  - Dismantle the mmWave radar or front camera.
  - Toe-in or rear camber has been adjusted during wheel alignment.
  - The vehicle experienced a collision.
  - ACC system performance has degraded or become abnormal.
- Use AEB based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.

REMINDER

- The system will not trigger AEB when the driver is aware of an emergency warning but turns the steering wheel, accelerates or brakes.
- AEB cannot guarantee a braking in all cases. In complex traffic, the system cannot always clearly identify all the vehicles, pedestrians or cyclists.
- In this case, the instrument cluster display shows corresponding information (dirty surface or foreign matter covering causes blindness of the sensor); then, foreign matters on the sensor surface shall be removed as required. IF AEB is off because that sensor is dirty or covered with foreign objects, clear the sensor to make it function normally.

Front Cross Traffic Alert (FCTA)

- When the vehicle is travelling at around 6-12 mph(10–20 km/h), the front cross traffic alert (FCTA) system continuously monitor the environment ahead through sensors such as mmWave radars or cameras on both sides of the front bumper. If a potential collision with a crossing vehicle, pedestrian, or cyclist is detected, the system issues a warning to alert the driver.
- During a warning event, the system alerts the driver via an audible beep from the buzzer and a visual prompt on the instrument cluster, rendered according to the radar detection side.

Function settings

- Enable or disable FCTA on the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → ADAS → Safety Assist.

REMINDER

- This function is disabled as delivered from the factory.
- When the vehicle is started, the system defaults to previous settings.

System Limitations

- FCTA is a driver assistance system and may not function under all traffic, weather, visibility, road, or vehicle conditions.
- The system may fail to issue a warning in certain scenarios, including but not limited to the following:
  - Targets are outside the mmWave radar's detection range.
  - Poor visibility conditions such as nighttime, rain, snow, heavy fog, etc.
  - There is an object occlusion between the target and the vehicle.
  - The function is disabled.
  - The vehicle is not in Drive gear.
  - The front bonnet, doors or boot is not properly closed or is opened while driving.
  - The driver is not wearing a seat belt or has unbuckled it.
  - The driver turns the steering wheel sharply or rapidly.
  - The accelerator pedal is deeply pressed.
  - The brake pedal is pressed hard and then released.
  - System initialisation has not been complete.
  - The system is in the process of starting, for example when vehicle is just powered on or restarting.
  - Scenarios listed under general system limitations.
  - The system is malfunctioning or requires servicing.
- The system may miss, misidentify, or delay obstacle detection due to factors such as front obstructions, target type, or appearance timing. This could result in no warning, false warning, or delayed warning. Such scenarios include but are not limited to:
  - When a target vehicle is approaching from the side at a high speed, the system may not be able to issue adequate warning.
  - The mmWave radars on both side of the front bumper are blocked by dirt, snow, or other obstructions.
  - Detection may be affected by noise or electromagnetic interference, leading to delays or malfunction.
  - The vehicle coming from the side suddenly changes the lane.
  - The target vehicle is obscured.
  - The radar cross section of the target vehicle (for example, a bicycle or electric moped) is too small.
  - The vehicle is running under severe weather, such as rain or snow.
  - MmWave radar(s) come off, are loosely installed, or are blocked.
  - The vehicle encounters complex metal guardrails or similar road conditions.
  - Vehicles coming from the front left or right side are detected too late at sharp turns, slopes, or other settings.
  - Other conditions outside the detection capability or range of the radar or camera.
- Vibration or collision may affect the calibration of mmWave radars,

resulting in degraded system performance. In this case, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.

- Unnecessary warning may be issued in too bright or reflective conditions due to puddles, shadows, manhole covers, metal plates, or road signs.

WARNING

- FCTA is only a driver assistance feature, and limitations and cautions listed here include only common situations affecting its functionality. Factors associated with system performance are more than these. Be sure to mind traffic around and make necessary response to danger in a timely manner to control the vehicle. The driver must be fully responsible for driving safety.
- Influence of weather, road conditions, and other factors may cause FCTA to fail or lead to late warning.
- Use FCTA based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.
- FCTA warnings may be delayed, missed, or falsely triggered due to system limitations.

Front Cross Traffic Braking (FCTB)

- When the vehicle is travelling at a speed below 12mph(20 km/h), the front cross traffic braking (FCTB) system continuously monitor the environment ahead through sensors such as mmWave radars or cameras on both sides of the front bumper. If a potential collision with a crossing vehicle, pedestrian, or cyclist is detected, the system applies automatic braking to assist the driver in avoiding or mitigating the collision.
- During braking, the instrument cluster issues warnings via text and visual prompts, rendered according to the radar detection side.

WARNING

- FCTB serves as a driver assistance function only, which helps the driver avoid or reduce the impact of collisions.
- Braking is influenced by multiple variables, including the vehicle's speed, sensor accuracy, object type, spatial relationship to the target, system response time, braking system efficiency, and tyre status. Braking may occur incorrectly if the system misidentifies objects.
- Be sure to mind traffic around and make necessary response to danger in a timely manner to control the vehicle.

Function settings

- Enable or disable the front cross traffic braking on the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → ADAS → Safety Assist.

REMINDER

- FCTB functions only when “Both” is chosen.
- This function is enabled as delivered from the factory.
- The system is enabled by default when the vehicle is started.

System limitations

- FCTB is a driver assistance system and may not function under all traffic, weather, visibility, road, or vehicle conditions.

- FCTB may not operate or disengage during a braking in certain conditions, including but not limited to the following:
  - Targets are outside the mmWave radar's detection range.
  - Poor visibility conditions such as nighttime, rain, snow or heavy fog.
  - The function is set to "OFF" or "Warning only".
  - The vehicle is not in Drive gear.
  - The front bonnet or boot is not properly closed or is opened while driving.
  - The driver is not wearing a seat belt or has unbuckled it.
  - The driver turns the steering wheel sharply or rapidly.
  - The accelerator pedal is deeply pressed.
  - The brake pedal is pressed hard and then released.
  - System initialisation has not been complete.
  - The system is in the process of starting, for example when vehicle is just powered on or restarting.
  - Scenarios listed under general system limitations.
  - The system is malfunctioning or requires servicing.
- In the following situations, the system may fail to detect, misidentify, or delay detecting obstacles due to front occlusion, target type, position, timing, or other factors, leading to no braking, false braking, or delayed braking. This includes but is not limited to:
  - When a target vehicle is approaching from the side at a high speed, the system may not be able to brake.
  - The mmWave radars on both side of the front bumper are blocked by dirt, snow, or other obstructions.
  - Detection may be affected by noise or electromagnetic interference, leading to delays or malfunction.
  - The vehicle coming from the side suddenly changes the lane.
  - The target vehicle is obscured.
  - The radar cross section of the target vehicle (for example, a bicycle or electric moped) is too small.
  - The vehicle is running under severe weather, such as rain or snow.
  - MmWave radar(s) come off, are loosely installed, or are blocked.
  - The vehicle encounters complex metal guardrails or similar road conditions.
  - The vehicle is heavily loaded.
  - Vehicles coming from the front left or right side are detected too late at sharp turns, slopes, or other settings.
  - Other conditions outside the detection capability or range of the radar or camera.
- Vibration or collision may affect the calibration of mmWave radars, resulting in degraded system performance. In this case, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.
- Unnecessary braking may be issued in too bright or reflective conditions due to puddles, shadows, manhole covers, metal plates, or road signs.
- To avoid unnecessary repeated braking, FCTB will not be triggered again within tens of seconds after the initial activation.

WARNING

- FCTB is only a driver assistance feature, and limitations and cautions listed here include only common situations affecting its functionality. Factors associated with system performance are more than these. Be sure to mind traffic around and make necessary response to danger in a timely manner to control the vehicle. The driver is fully responsible for driving safety.
- Influence of weather, road conditions, and other factors may cause FCTB to fail or lead to late warning.
- Use FCTB based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.
- FCTB may be delayed, missed, or triggered unnecessarily due to system limitations.

Traffic sign recognition (TSR)

- The traffic sign recognition (TSR) system identifies speed limit signs on the road through the multi-purpose camera or maps. When the speed limit icon on the instrument cluster lights up, it means the vehicle speed should be within range.

Function overview

- TSR contains four sub-functions: Speed limit information forecast(SLIF), road sign information(RSI), speed limit forecast(SLF) and intelligent speed alert(ISA).
- Speed Limit Information Forecast(SLIF): detects speed limit information by using cameras or maps and lights up the speed limit indicator on the instrument cluster when being activated.
- Road Sign Information(RSI): detects speed sign information by using cameras or maps and provides auxiliary prompts by lighting up the speed sign indicator on the instrument cluster when being activated.
- Speed Limit Forecast(SLF): Under highway or urban expressway conditions, the speed limit information is obtained via the map. The instrument cluster displays the speed limit icon to provide advance notice of speed limit value and the distance to the new speed limit point.
- Speed Limit Alert(ISA): When the instrument cluster shows the speed is above the identified speed limit, the speed limit icon will provide a visual or audible alert to remind the driver not to exceed the speed limit.

Function settings

- Switch TSR and related features on or off on the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → ADAS → Safety Assist.
- Traffic sign recognition function is enabled by default.
- When TSR is off, neither TSR or any related feature is enabled.
- When TSR is on, SLIF and RSI is on while SLF and ISA can be switched on or off according to needs.
- SLF switches this feature on or off
- Speed limit change tone: mutes or unmutes the tone indicating speed limit sign change.
- ISA: enables or disables the indicator or audible alarm for driving over the speed limit sign.
- Speed limit warning (SLW): The audible alert for when the vehicle speed exceeds the speed limit can be enabled/disabled via the dropdown interface on the Home Screen.

REMINDER

- The map data will update regularly to ensure the system performance.
- The TSR system identifies speed limit signs, not any other traffic signs, and does not involves in the active control of the vehicle. Please drive responsibly.
- The front camera must not be blocked or exposed to strong lights. If the system is interrupted by short time periods of such blockage or exposure, clear the camera's field of view to resume the functionality. If not, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.
- If TSR malfunctions and is unavailable, Perform the repair immediately.

System Limitations

- As a driver assistance system, TSR may not respond to all traffic, weather, visibility, road conditions.
- The detection of speed limit signs is easily interfered by the environment. Situations that may lead to failure or performance degradation of the system include but are not limited to:
  - The front windscreen is dirty or fogged, or the front camera is blocked.
  - Sudden lighting changes, such as when the vehicle is entering or exiting a tunnel
  - Unclear, distorted, inclined, reflective, partly blocked or covered speed limit signs
  - Poor visibility on snowy, rainy, or foggy days
  - Weight or width limit signs not in standard size as per national regulations
  - Due to the time limitation of map-based speed limit data, the system may receive incorrect speed limits, such as those caused by road construction, sign changes, or new/cancelled speed signs.
  - The positioning of vehicle is inaccurate in complex road conditions such as multi-level overpasses or parallel main and auxiliary roads.
- System operation may be affected by cracked windscreens within the front camera's field of view, dyed or improperly coated windscreen glass, reflective objects on the dashboard, and interference with camera sight.

WARNING

- TSR only serves to alert for speeding and cannot assist in speed control. Do not be over-reliant on it.
- TSR is only an assistance feature, and cautions here include only common situations affecting the TSR function. Factors associated with system performance are more than these. Be sure to mind traffic around and make necessary response to danger in a timely manner to control the vehicle. The driver is fully responsible for driving safety.

CAUTION

- Situations where lane lines may not be identified include, but are not limited to:
  - Unclear speed limit signs

CAUTION

- incomplete speed limit signs.

- Situations that may result in detection failure of the front camera or late function activation include but are not limited to:
  - Camera coming off, loosely installed, or blocked.
  - The vehicle is running under extreme weather, such as rain, snow, or smog.
- TSR may not work, work improperly, or deactivate itself when:
  - The system is in the process of starting. For example, the vehicle is just powered on or the driver assistance system is restarting.
  - Situations mentioned in System Limitations happen.
  - The driver assistance system malfunctions or requires servicing.

Side Safety Assist

Lane Departure Assist (LDA)

- When the vehicle unintentionally departs from its current lane, LDA alerts the driver or assists in steering the vehicle back into the lane.
- Lane Departure Assist (LDA) includes two sub-functions: Lane Departure Warning (LDW) and Lane Departure Prevention (LDP) The system's operating speed range is 37-93 mph(60-150 km/h).
- Lane departure warning (LDW): The system detects lane markings and the vehicle's position within the lane using cameras and other sensors. If the vehicle unintentionally drifts out of its lane without a driver steering input (significant steering wheel or turn signal operation), the system issues a warning via instrument cluster display (lane marking on the departure side shown in red), steering wheel vibration, or an audible alert to help reduce lane departure risks.
- Lane departure prevention (LDP): The system detects lane markings and the vehicle's position within the lane using cameras and other sensors. If the vehicle unintentionally drifts out of its lane without a driver steering input (significant steering wheel rotation or turn signal operation), the system issues a warning via instrument cluster display (lane marking on the departure side shown in blue) and applies steering assistance to guide the vehicle back into the lane, helping reduce lane departure risks.

Function settings

- To adjust LDA settings, go to infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → ADAS → Safety Assist → Lane Departure Assist.
- All LDA functions are enabled as delivered from the factory and every time when the vehicle is started.
- The LDA alert mode is set as steering wheel vibration by default and can be changed to Sound alert, Vibration alert or Sound + Vibration alert.
- The lane departure sensitivity is set as “Moderate” by default.When situations such as driver fatigue are detected, the system automatically adjusts to “High” sensitivity. Power cycling the vehicle will restore the sensitivity to “Moderate”.
- OFF: no LDA functions active.

- Warning: only LDW enabled, no steering intervention.
- Prevention: only LDP enabled, steering intervention applied.
- All activated: Activating both the lane departure warning (LDW) and lane departure prevention (LDP) at the same time.
- The system restores the default settings when the vehicle is started.

REMINDER

- LDA is suppressed if a turn signal is used and the vehicle changes lane as indicated by the turn signal.
- If the driver continuously drives over lane markings, LDA will be suppressed.
- LDP will deactivate if the driver forcefully presses the brake or accelerator pedal, or makes significant steering inputs.
- LDA is suppressed if any door or the bonnet is open or faulty.
- The function will temporarily suspend operation if any object blocks the camera or if it is exposed to strong lights. Function resumes automatically once conditions recover. If it does not, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.
- While the Steering Wheel function is activated, the driver's hands must not be off the steering wheel, otherwise the system will prompt the driver to take over the steering wheel by sound or vibration.
- When LDA fails, is displayed on the instrument cluster

REMINDER

with an audible alert and a prompt message. Contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.

System limitations

- LDA is a driver assistance system and may not function under all traffic, weather, visibility, road, or vehicle conditions.
- The detection of land markings is easily interfered by the environment. Situations that may lead to failure or performance degradation of the system include but are not limited to:
  - Dirty or fogged front windscreen, or blocked front camera.
  - Glaring from direct sunlight, reflection in puddles, or oncoming vehicles
  - Sudden changes in light, such as when the vehicle is entering or exiting a tunnel
  - Lane markings obscured by direct sunlight or tree shadows.
  - Poor visibility on snowy, rainy, or foggy days.
  - Confusing or unclear lane markings, for example when old and new lines overlap or are temporarily altered during road construction.
  - Rapid changes in lane markings, such as lane splits, crossings, or merges.
  - Lane markings are unclear, too thin, worn, blurred or covered by dirt or snow.
  - Lanes are too narrow, the number of lanes increases or decreases, lane markings change suddenly (for example, on a ramp or exit),

or in situations of complex line arrangements.

- The vehicle is driving on steep slopes or sharp curves, following too closely behind another vehicle, or when the vehicle ahead blocks the lane markings.

- The system may be unable to correct in time due to slippery road surfaces or excessive lateral deviation speed, such as:
  - Poor road conditions, for example after road spraying, or wet/slippery surfaces following rain or snow.
  - Excessive or insufficient lateral deviation speed of the vehicle.
  - Other conditions that affect or reduce the vehicle’ s steering performance.
- System operation may be affected by cracked windscreens within the front camera's field of view, dyed or improperly coated windscreen glass, reflective objects on the dashboard, and interference with camera sight.

WARNING

- For your safety, do not test LDA functions intentionally.
- Do not be over-reliant on LDA functions. LDW only serves to alert for lane departure and cannot assist in steering control. The LDP function only assists in steering correction to return the vehicle to its original lane when the vehicle swerves from original lane. It cannot continuously control the vehicle to remain in the centre of the lane. Do not rely on LDP to avoid side collisions.
- LDA is only a driver assistance feature, and limitations and

WARNING

cautions listed here include only common situations affecting its functionality. Factors associated with system performance are more than these. The driver must stay aware of the surroundings and take necessary control measures promptly if the function is suppressed or deactivated. The driver is fully responsible for driving safety.

- Use LDA based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.

CAUTION

- Disabling LDA is recommended under any of the following circumstances:
  - Driving in a sporty style
  - Severe weather conditions
  - On uneven roads.
- Situations where lane lines may not be identified include, but are not limited to:
  - Unclear lane lines
  - Incomplete lane lines
- Situations that may result in detection failure of the camera or late activation of the function include but are not limited to:
  - Camera coming off, loosely installed, or blocked;
  - The vehicle is running under extreme weather, such as rain, snow, or smog.
  - LDW and LDP cannot be activated when the vehicle is in special driving modes* such

CAUTION

as Trailer, Snow, Mud, Sand, or Mountain.

- LDA may not work, may work improperly, or may deactivate itself when:
  - The system is in the process of starting. For example, the vehicle is just powered on or the driver assistance system is restarting.
  - Situations mentioned in General System Limitations happen.
  - The driver assistance system malfunctions or requires servicing.

Emergency Lane Keeping Assist (ELKA)

- When the vehicle unintentionally departs from the current roadway or lane and there is a collision risk with a vehicle approaching from the rear in an adjacent lane or with oncoming traffic in the opposite lane, ELKA assists in steering correction to help avoid or mitigate a potential collision.
- Emergent Lane Keeping Assist (ELKA)detects lane markings and road edges ahead with sensors such as cameras and detect vehicles in adjacent lanes with mmWave radars. If the system determines that the driver unintentionally departs from the road or is at risk of doing so, and there is a collision risk with a detected target vehicle, it assists in steering correction to help the vehicle stay in its current lane. This helps prevent unintentional road departures and reduces the risk of collision with oncoming or overtaking vehicles in adjacent lanes.

Function settings

- To enable or disable ELKA, go to infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → ADAS → Safety Assist.
  - ELKA is enabled as delivered from the factory and will remain enabled after each restart.
  - OFF: ELKA will not operate.
  - On: ELKA is active.

REMINDER

- ELKA will deactivate if the driver forcefully presses the brake or accelerator pedal, or makes significant steering inputs.
- If the turn signal is activated and the driver steers in the indicated direction, ELKA will be suppressed when the vehicle is departing toward the road edge or toward the opposite lane with oncoming traffic present.
- If the driver continuously drives over lane markings or the road edge, ELKA will be suppressed.
- If there is a risk of deviation from the road or side collision but corrective steering could result in a collision with an obstacle along the new path, ELKA will not intervene.
- The front camera must not be blocked or exposed to strong lights. If the system is interrupted by short time periods of such blockage or exposure, clear the camera's field of view to resume the functionality. If it does not, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.
- If a malfunction occurs, the indicator will illuminate in the instrument cluster and ELKA will be unavailable. Contact a

REMINDER

BYD authorised dealer or service provider.

System limitations

- ELKA's detection of lane markings, road edges, and obstacles may be impaired under certain conditions, resulting in no intervention, inappropriate intervention, or reduced performance. Situations include but are not limited to:
  - Dirty or fogged front windscreen, or blocked front camera.
  - Glaring from direct sunlight, reflection in puddles, or oncoming vehicles
  - Sudden changes in light, such as when the vehicle is entering or exiting a tunnel
  - Lane markings obscured by direct sunlight or tree shadows.
  - Unidentifiable road edge with grass, soil, or kerb.
  - Poor visibility on snowy, rainy, or foggy days
  - Confusing or unclear lane markings, for example when old and new lines overlap or are temporarily altered during road construction.
  - Rapid changes in lane markings, such as lane splits, crossings, or merges.
  - Lane markings are unclear, too thin, worn, blurred or covered by dirt or snow.
  - Lanes are too narrow, the number of lanes increases or decreases, lane markings change suddenly (for example, on a ramp or exit), or in situations of complex line arrangements.
  - The vehicle is driving on steep slopes or sharp curves, following too closely behind another vehicle, or when the vehicle ahead blocks the lane markings.
- The system may miss, misidentify, or delay obstacle detection due to factors such as the type, position, timing, or occlusion of obstacles, resulting in delayed or failed intervention. Scenarios include:
  - Large vehicles ahead block the detection area of the radar or camera.
  - Obstacles move quickly or are at close range into the front or side of the vehicle.
  - Fences, water barriers, traffic cones, or other obstacles in the vehicle's front lateral or rear lateral areas that the system may fail to detect.
  - Obstacles block the radar or camera's detection area, such as vehicles, pedestrians, or cyclists in the front lateral or rear lateral areas.
  - Obstacles in the front lateral or rear lateral areas with low visual contrast against the surrounding environment.
  - Targets in the front lateral or rear lateral areas that can only be detected after the vehicle changes lanes.
  - Targets in the front lateral or rear lateral are located on a curve.
  - Other conditions outside the detection capability or range of the radar or camera.
- The system may be unable to correct in time due to slippery road surfaces or excessive lateral deviation speed, such as:

- Poor road conditions, for example after road spraying, or wet/slippery surfaces following rain or snow.
- Excessive or insufficient lateral deviation speed of the vehicle.
- Driving on sharp curves.
- Other conditions that affect or reduce the vehicle’ s steering performance.

- System operation may be affected by cracked windscreens within the front camera's field of view, dyed or improperly coated windscreen glass, reflective objects on the dashboard, and interference with camera sight.

WARNING

- For your safety, do not test the ELKA function intentionally.
- The ELKA function only assists in steering correction to return the vehicle to its original lane when there is a collision risk due to unintended road or lane departure. It cannot continuously control the vehicle to remain in the centre of the lane. Do not rely on ELKA to avoid side collisions.
- ELKA is only a driver assistance feature, and limitations and cautions listed here include only common situations affecting its functionality. Factors associated with system performance are more than these. Be sure to mind traffic around and make necessary response to danger in a timely manner to control the vehicle. The driver is fully responsible for driving safety.
- Use ELKA based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.

CAUTION

- Situations where lane lines may not be identified include, but are not limited to:
  - Pedestrians, animals, and specialty or specially-shaped vehicles
  - Unclear or incomplete lane lines
- Situations that may result in detection failure of the camera or late alarm include but are not limited to:
  - Camera coming off, loosely installed, or blocked.
  - The vehicle is running under extreme weather, such as rain, snow, or smog.
  - Partially or completely blocked camera lens.
- Situations that may result in detection failure of mmWave radars or late alarms include, but are not limited to:
  - MmWave radar(s) come off, are loosely installed, or are blocked.
  - The vehicle is running under extreme weather, such as rain, snow, or smog.
  - The vehicle encounters certain metal guardrails or similar road conditions.
  - ELKA cannot be activated when the vehicle is in special driving modes such as Snow.
- ELKA may not work, may work improperly, or may deactivate itself when:
  - The vehicle is at an intersection.

CAUTION

- The system is in the process of starting. For example, the vehicle is just powered on or the driver assistance system is restarting.
- Situations mentioned in General System Limitations happen.
- The driver assistance system malfunctions or requires servicing.

Blind spot detection (BSD)

- When a target in the driver's blind spot is detected, the system gives a warning to remind the driver of safe driving. The function is enabled by default.

Function overview

- The Blind Spot Detection (BSD)function uses sensors such as radars to detect targets (vehicles or riders) in the driver's blind spot on the side of the vehicle. When the vehicle runs at a speed of about 10mph - 93mph(15 km/h - 150 km/h), the indicator on the side mirror flashes when BSD detects a target in the blind area. If the driver toggles the turning signal lever at this time, the side mirror indicator at the target side, the instrument indicator, and the light-coloured radar wave on the same side of the instrument will flash, with an optional audible alarm given to remind the driver of the danger of collision.

REMINDER

- Do not attach any objects to the side mirror lens, as it may interfere with the normal operation of BSD.

REMINDER

- The driver should ensure the normal operation of the BSD system, keeping the BSD radar sensors in good condition. For example, if they are covered in dirt, snow or other obstructions, they need to be cleared right away.
- BSD will not operate in the travel with trailer mode*.
- Influence of vibration or collision on the side BSD radar sensor calibration can degrade system performance. In this case, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.

Function settings

- Enable or disable BSD on the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → ADAS → Safety Assist.
- This function is enabled as delivered from the factory.
- When the vehicle is started, the system defaults to previous settings.

System Limitations

- BSD is a driver assistance system and may not function under all traffic, weather, visibility, road, or vehicle conditions.
- Situations where BSD and related features may work improperly or deactivate themselves include but are not limited to:
  - Poor visibility conditions such as rain, snow, fog, heavy smoke, etc.
  - Driving on sharp curves.
  - The vehicle speed is less than 9 km/h.

- The vehicle is overtaking the preceding vehicle or encountering an oncoming vehicle.

- The system is in the process of starting (for example, vehicle is just powered on or restarting).
- Scenarios listed under general system limitations.
- The system is malfunctioning or requires servicing.
- Poor lighting conditions such as glare or reflections may lead to false obstacle detections by the system. For instance, tracks, gantries, or reflective road studs could be misclassified as obstacles, resulting in an unintended warning.

WARNING

- When the BSD system gives a warning, the driver should avoid lane changes toward the warning-indicated side. The driver should ensure that lane changes are made in a safe manner at all times.
- BSD can not replace interior rearview mirror and side mirrors.
- You are supposed to always be alert to all possible dangers around and intervene or control the vehicle whenever necessary, for example, by slowing down, braking, or steering away as appropriate. Failure to observe this precaution could impair driving safety, resulting in an accident and even property loss or personal injuries.

Door Open Warning (DOW)

- When detecting a risk of collision when opening the door, the system gives a warning to alert the driver, reducing the possibility of collision and improving safety. The function is enabled by default.

Function overview

- Door Open Warning (DOW)detects targets (vehicles, cyclists) on both sides of the vehicle through sensors such as radars. When the vehicle is stationary with power-on or drives slowly at a speed below 1mph(2 km/h), the alarm indicator on the side mirror lights up when DOW detects that there is a risk of collision when opening the door. The indicator remains on until DOW is deactivated, alerting the driver to the risk. If the driver opens the door at this time, the indicator on the corresponding side flashes, accompanied by a audio prompt, reminding the driver to pay attention to the collision risk.

REMINDER

- Do not attach any objects to the side mirror lens, as it may interfere with the normal operation of DOW.
- The driver should ensure the proper functioning of DOW and maintain the condition of the radar installation areas in good condition. Any obstructions such as mud, snow, or other coverings should be promptly removed.
- In towing mode*, DOW does not work.
- Vibration or collision may affect the calibration of the DOW's side assist radars, which will degrade the system performance. In this case, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.

Function settings

- Users can turn on or off DOW(enabled by default) through the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → ADAS → Safety Assist.
- When the vehicle is started, the system defaults to previous settings.

System Limitations

- DOW is a driver assistance system and may not function under all traffic, weather, visibility, road, or vehicle conditions.
- Situations where DOW and related features may work improperly or deactivate themselves include but are not limited to:
  - Poor visibility conditions such as rain, snow, fog, heavy smoke, etc.
  - The vehicle stops at a turning point or near a wall.
  - There is a large vehicle behind the vehicle, which blocks the radar detection area of the vehicle.
  - There are small targets or slow moving targets.
  - The target speed is too high or there is turning behaviour, such as the target vehicle changing lanes to the rear of the vehicle, or other vehicles suddenly changing lanes and entering the detection area behind the vehicle.
- The system is in the process of starting. For example, the vehicle is just powered on or the driver assistance system is restarting.
- Scenarios listed under general system limitations.
- The system is malfunctioning or requires servicing.
- Poor lighting conditions such as glare or reflections may lead to false obstacle detections by the system. For instance, tracks, gantries, or reflective road studs could be misclassified as obstacles, resulting in an unintended warning.

WARNING

- DOW cannot detect objects behind other vehicles or obstacles.
- DOW cannot replace the use of interior and exterior rearview mirrors or manual visual inspections by drivers and passengers. Active observation of the door opening environment before getting off is the most effective measure and responsibility for drivers and passengers to ensure personal safety.
- DOW may give a warning when there is no risk of collision. Stay alert and monitor traffic to decide if action is needed.
- DOW can only prompt the collision risk through warning, but cannot avoid the collision accident.
- You are supposed to always be alert to all possible dangers around and intervene or control the vehicle whenever necessary, for example, by slowing down, braking, or steering away as appropriate. Failure to observe this precaution could impair driving safety, resulting in an accident and even property loss or personal injuries.

Rear Safety Assist

Rear collision warning (RCW)

- The system issues a warning to the driver when a collision from behind is detected while moving forward. The function is enabled by default.

Function overview

- When the vehicle runs at a speed below 93mph(150 km/h), the RCW system detects the driving environment behind the vehicle in real time through sensors such as radars. The system issues a warning when it identifies that the rear vehicle may rear-end the vehicle.
- During warning, the interior ambient lights and the front left/right ambient lights on the corresponding side are steady on, and the red area at the rear of the vehicle image on the instrument cluster is highlighted. In addition to issuing a warning to the driver on the instrument cluster, the vehicle simultaneously activates the hazard warning lights to alert following drivers of a potential collision risk.
- When reversing, the RCW system does not work.

WARNING

- The RCW system is a driver assistance feature. Its activation may be afffected by factors such as vehicle speed, obstacle type, distance to the obstacle, driving environment, and system response delay, which may result in untimely warnings, missed alerts, or false alarms. RCW cannot replace the driver's driving and judgement.

WARNING

- The driver must ensure the normal operation of RCW, keeping its radars in good condition. For example, dirt, snow, or other obstructions need to be cleared right away.
- In towing mode*, RCW does not work.
- Vibration or collision may affect the calibration of the RCW's rear assist radars, which will degrade the system performance. In this case, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.

Function settings

- Enable or disable RCW on the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → ADAS → Safety Assist.
- This function is enabled as delivered from the factory.
- When the vehicle is started, the system defaults to previous settings.

System Limitations

- RCW is a driver assistance system and may not function under all traffic, weather, visibility, road, or vehicle conditions.
- The RCW system only takes effect when the vehicle is stationary or moving forward. When reversing, the RCW system does not work.
- The system may fail to issue a warning in certain scenarios, including but not limited to the following:
  - Poor visibility conditions such as rain, snow, fog, heavy smoke, etc.
  - Any door, the bonnet, or the tailgate is open or faulty.

- The driver turns the steering wheel, or the vehicle has a risk of lateral instability (such as excessive steering wheel angle or high steering rate).
- The driver brakes hard.
- The system is in the process of starting. For example, the vehicle is just powered on or the driver assistance system is restarting.
- Scenarios listed under general system limitations.
- The system is malfunctioning or requires servicing.

- In the following situations (including but not limited to), the system may fail to detect, misidentify, or experience delayed detection of obstacles due to rear obstructions, obstacle type, position, timing, or other factors, which may result in no warning or delayed warning.
  - Poor weather conditions such as rain, snow, or fog.
  - There is a large vehicle behind the vehicle, which blocks the detection area of the radars or cameras of the vehicle.
  - There are situations where the vehicle's rear is obstructed, or the obstacle has low contrast with the forward visibility environment, leading to unclear, inaccurate, or incomplete detection of the obstacle.
  - The vehicle or the rear target is in a curve.
  - The vehicle's rear has a target that can only be detected after the vehicle changes lanes.
  - High-speed objects, such as fast-moving vehicles or sudden rear-approaching vehicles.
  - The vehicle is reversing.
  - Other conditions outside the detection capability or range of the radar or camera.
- Poor lighting conditions such as glare or reflections may lead to false obstacle detections by the system. For instance, tracks, gantries, or reflective road studs could be misclassified as obstacles, resulting in an unintended warning.

WARNING

- The RCW system is a driver assistance feature. Its activation may be afffected by factors such as vehicle speed, obstacle type, distance to the obstacle, driving environment, and system response delay. RCW only provides reminder assistance and cannot replace the driver's driving and judgement. Do not rely heavily on the warning issued by the RCW system. RCW cannot replace the driver's driving and judgement.
- RCW can only remind the collision risk through the reminder, and can not avoid the collision accident or reduce the collision injury. When the vehicle issues a warning, the driver should take immediate safety measures to prevent the vehicle from further danger.
- RCW may be delayed, missed, or falsely triggered due to system limitations.
- You are supposed to always be alert to all possible dangers around and intervene or control the vehicle whenever necessary, for example, by slowing down, braking, or steering away as appropriate. Failure to observe this precaution could impair

WARNING

driving safety, resulting in an accident and even property loss or personal injuries.

Rear cross traffic alert (RCTA)

Function overview

- When the vehicle is reversing, the RCTA system detects the vehicles travelling in the blind spot at the back. The system gives a warning when it is detected that there is a risk of collision between the vehicle and the rear lateral crossing vehicle, pedestrians or riders. The operating speed range of the rear lateral collision warning system is 0-9 mph (0-15 km/h).
- When the system gives a warning, the instrument cluster displays light grey radar waves on the corresponding side of the vehicle, textual prompts, audible alarm and voice broadcast, and triggers target object rendering to alert the driver of potential risks.

WARNING

- RCTA is a driver assistance feature. Its activation may be afffected by factors such as vehicle speed, sensor accuracy, obstacle type, distance to the obstacle, driving environment, and system response delay, which may result in untimely warnings, missed alerts, or false alarms. Be sure to mind traffic around and make necessary response to danger in a timely manner to control the vehicle.

Function settings

- Enable or disable RCTA on the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → ADAS → Safety Assist.

REMINDER

- This function is disabled as delivered from the factory.
- When the vehicle is started, the system defaults to previous settings.

System Limitations

- RCTA is a driver assistance system and may not function under all traffic, weather, visibility, road, or vehicle conditions.
- The system may fail to issue a warning in certain scenarios, including but not limited to the following:
  - Targets are outside the mmWave radar's detection range.
  - Poor visibility conditions such as nighttime, rain, snow, heavy fog, etc.
  - The function is disabled.
  - The vehicle is not in Reverse gear.
  - System initialisation has not been complete.
  - The system is in the process of starting, for example when vehicle is just powered on or restarting.
  - Scenarios listed under general system limitations.
  - The system is malfunctioning or requires servicing.
- In the following situations, the system may fail to detect, misidentify, or delay detecting obstacles due to rear occlusion, target type, position, timing, or other factors, leading to no warning or delayed warning. This includes but is not limited to:
  - The vehicle coming from behind changes the lane suddenly.

- The target vehicle is approaching from behind at a high speed.
- The vehicle drives at sharp turns, slopes, or other settings.
- The target is obscured.
- The vehicle is running under severe weather, such as rain or snow. Radar coming off, loosely installed, or blocked; The vehicle encounters certain metal guardrails or similar road conditions.
- Detection may be affected or delayed in some environments. If the radar reflective cross section of the target (a bicycle, three-wheelers, four-wheelers, pedestrian, electric bicycles, motorcycle, or non-standard vehicles, for example) is too small, the system may not be able to establish its distance to the target ahead, resulting in either late or no response to the target.
- The mmWave radar may malfunction or misidentify targets due to interference from other mmWave radars.

- In towing mode*, RCTA does not work.
- Vibration or collision may affect the calibration of mmWave radars, resulting in degraded system performance. In this case, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.
- Unnecessary warning may be issued in too bright or reflective conditions due to puddles, shadows, manhole covers, metal plates, or road signs.

WARNING

- RCTA is only a driver assistance feature, and limitations and cautions listed here include only common situations affecting its functionality. Factors associated with system performance are more than these. Be sure to mind traffic around and make necessary response to danger in a timely manner to control the vehicle. The driver must be fully responsible for driving safety.
- Influence of weather, road conditions, and other factors may cause RCTA to fail or lead to late warning.
- Use RCTA based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.
- RCTA may be delayed, missed, or falsely triggered due to system limitations.

Rear cross traffic braking (RCTB)

- Rear Cross Traffic Braking (RCTB)is used if the vehicle meets another vehicle crossing the road when leaving a vertical/slanted parking space. It gives a warning and helps the driver brake to prevent collision, especially when the visual field of the driver is blocked by the vehicle parking beside. The operating speed range of the rear lateral impact braking system is 0-6 mph (0-10 km/h).
- When braking, the instrument cluster displays light grey radar waves on the corresponding side of the vehicle and textual prompts to alert the driver of potential risks.

WARNING

- RCTB serves as a driver assistance function only, which helps the driver avoid or reduce the impact of collisions.

WARNING

- Braking is influenced by multiple variables, including the vehicle's speed, sensor accuracy, object type, spatial relationship to the target, system response time, braking system efficiency, and tyre status. Braking may occur incorrectly if the system misidentifies objects. Be sure to mind traffic around and make necessary response to danger in a timely manner to control the vehicle.

Function settings

- Enable or disable RCTB on the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → ADAS → Safety Assist.

REMINDER

- This function is disabled as delivered from the factory.
- When the vehicle is started, the system defaults to previous settings.

System Limitations

- RCTB is a driver assistance system and may not function under all traffic, weather, visibility, road, or vehicle conditions.
- The system may fail to brake in certain scenarios, including but not limited to the following:
  - Targets are outside the mmWave radar's detection range.
  - Poor visibility conditions such as nighttime, rain, snow or heavy fog.
  - The function is set to "OFF" or "Warning only".
  - The vehicle is not in Reverse gear.
  - The accelerator pedal is deeply pressed.
  - System initialisation has not been complete.
  - The system is in the process of starting, for example when vehicle is just powered on or restarting.
  - Scenarios listed under general system limitations.
  - The system is malfunctioning or requires servicing.
- In the following situations, the system may fail to detect, misidentify, or delay detecting obstacles due to rear occlusion, target type, position, timing, or other factors, leading to no braking or delayed braking. This includes but is not limited to:
  - The vehicle coming from behind changes the lane suddenly.
  - The target vehicle is approaching from behind at a high speed.
  - The vehicle drives at sharp turns, slopes, or other settings.
  - The target is obscured.
  - The vehicle is running under severe weather, such as rain or snow. Radar coming off, loosely installed, or blocked; The vehicle encounters certain metal guardrails or similar road conditions.
  - Detection may be affected or delayed in some environments. If the radar reflective cross section of the target (a bicycle, three-wheelers, four-wheelers, pedestrian, cyclist, electric bicycles, motorcycle, or non-standard vehicles, for example) is too small, the system may not be able to establish its distance to the target ahead, resulting in either late or no response to the target.

- The mmWave radar may malfunction or misidentify targets due to interference from other mmWave radars.

- In towing mode*, RCTB does not work.
- Vibration or collision may affect the calibration of mmWave radars, resulting in degraded system performance. In this case, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.
- Unnecessary braking may occur in bright or reflective conditions due to puddles, shadows, manhole covers, metal plates, or road signs.
- To avoid unnecessary repeated braking, RCTB will not be triggered again within tens of seconds after the initial activation.

WARNING

- RCTB is only used as a driving assistance function, and limitations and cautions listed here include only common situations affecting its functionality. Factors associated with system performance are more than these. Be sure to mind traffic around and make necessary response to danger in a timely manner to control the vehicle. The driver must be fully responsible for driving safety.
- Influence of weather, road conditions, and other factors may cause RCTB to fail or lead to late braking.
- Use RCTB based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.
- RCTB may be delayed, missed, or triggered unnecessarily due to system limitations.

Other Main Functions

Parking Assist System

- During vehicle parking, the parking assist system detects obstacles by sensors, and prompts the driver with the proximity of obstacles by an image on the infotainment touchscreen* and a speaker alarm.
- The parking assist system helps with reversing. Pay attention to the environment behind and around the vehicle during reversing.
- When you reverse the vehicle, a reversing image will be displayed on the infotainment touchscreen automatically.
- For your driving safety, when the reversing image is displayed, all buttons will be disabled except some volume and calls-related buttons.
- After reversing ends, the interface will be restored.

WARNING

- The parking assist system ceases to operate when the vehicle speed is over 6 mph (10 km/h).
- Do not place any articles within the sensors' working range.
- To prevent sensor malfunction, do not wash the sensor area with water or steam.
- When no camera is available, a "No video signal detected" message is displayed.

Reversing Radar Power Switch

- You can enable or disable the reversing radar with the switch* or on the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → ADAS → Parking Assist → Reversing Radar.
- When the ignition is switched on, the parking assist system is enabled automatically.

- When the parking assist system is enabled, the vehicle is not in "P", and the Electronic Parking Brake (EPB)and Auto Vehicle Hold (AVH)are released, the obstacle detection mode of the parking assist system is enabled. When enabled, the system raises an alarm if obstacles are found surrounding the vehicle; when disabled, it does not.

Sensor Type

- When the sensor detects an obstacle, an image is displayed on the infotainment touchscreen* according to the location of the obstacle and its distance from the vehicle.
- When the driver conducts parallel parking or reverse parking, the sensor measures the distance between the vehicle and the obstacle and communicates this information through the infotainment touchscreen and the speaker. Be aware of the surroundings when using this system.

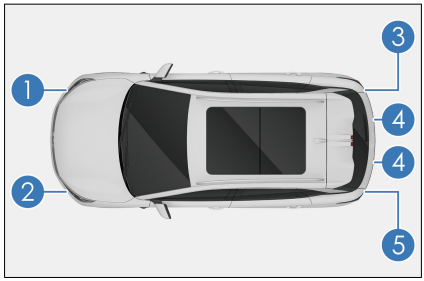
① Front right sensor

② Front left sensor

③ Rear right sensor

④ Rear middle sensors

⑤ Rear left sensor



Distance Display and Speaker

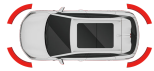
When the sensor detects an obstacle, the location of the obstacle and its approximate distance from the vehicle are displayed on the infotainment touchscreen, and the speaker beeps.

Working examples of centre sensors

Approximate Distance	Touchscreen Display Example	Alarm Sound
28~47 in.(700~1200 mm)		Slow

Approximate Distance	Touchscreen Display Example	Alarm Sound
16~28 in.(400~700 mm)		Fast
8~16 in.(200~400 mm)		Continuous

Working example of corner sensors

Approximate Distance	Touchscreen Display Example	Alarm Sound
16~23 in.(400~600 mm)		Fast
8~16 in.(200~400 mm)		Continuous

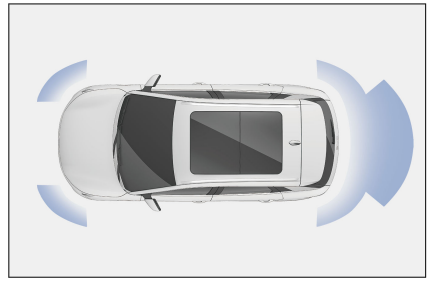
CAUTION

- 0-8 in.(0~200 mm) is the blind spot range of the system. For the poor detection accuracy and inaccurate alarm information, the alarm prompts in 0~200mm are for reference only.

Working Sensors and Detection Range

All sensors are activated upon reversing.

The illustration shows the sensors' detection range. Sensors have a range limitation, so the driver must check the surroundings before slowly reversing the vehicle.



REMINDER

- The parking assist system is only used for assistance rather than substitution of your personal judgement. Be sure to operate the vehicle based on your observations.
- Sensors will not work properly if accessories or other objects

REMINDER

are placed within their detection range.

- In some cases, the system cannot operate properly and will fail to detect certain objects as the vehicle approaches them. Therefore, be sure to observe the vehicle's surroundings at all times. Do not rely solely upon the system.
- Failure of the reversing radar system* is indicated by a message on the instrument cluster and a beep, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for inspection as soon as possible in the event of the error message.

Sensor Detection Information

- Certain vehicle conditions and surroundings may affect the sensors' ability to accurately detect obstacles. Detection accuracy may be affected if:
  - There is dirt, water or fog on the sensor.
  - There is snow or frost on the sensor.
  - The sensor is masked in any way.
  - The vehicle leans significantly to one side or is overloaded.
  - The vehicle is moving on particularly bumpy roads, slopes, gravel or grass.
  - The sensor has been repainted.
  - The vicinity is noisy due to honking of vehicles, motorcycle engines, air brakes of large vehicles, or other noises that produce ultrasonic waves.
  - There's another vehicle with parking assist system nearby.
  - The vehicle is fitted with a tow eye.
  - The bumper or the sensor was hit hard.
  - The vehicle is approaching a high or zigzag kerb.
  - The vehicle is driving in the sun or in the cold.
  - The vehicle is fitted with non-original suspension that is lower than the original one.
- Except as described above, sensors may not be able to correctly determine the actual distance due to the shape of the object.
- The shape and material of obstacles may prevent sensors from detecting them, especially the following:
  - Electric wires, fences, and ropes
  - Cotton, snow, and other materials that absorb radio waves
  - Any object with sharp edges and corners
  - Low obstacles
  - High obstacles facing outwards towards the vehicle
  - Any object under the bumper
  - Any object close to the vehicle
  - Persons near the vehicle (depending on the type of clothing)
- If an image is displayed on the infotainment touchscreen* or there is a beep, it may be that the sensor detects an obstacle or is interfered. If the issue persists, go to a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for inspection.

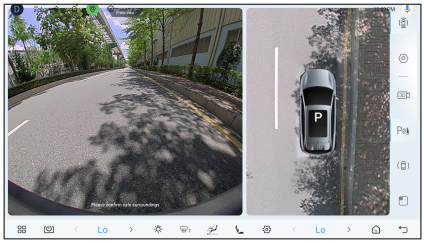
CAUTION

- To prevent sensor malfunction, do not rinse or apply steam to the sensor area.

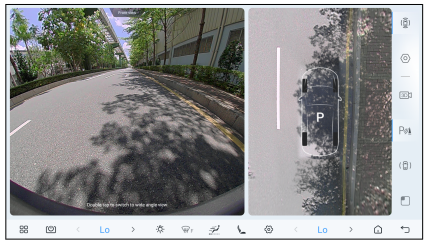
Panoramic View System*

To enable the panoramic view, tap Vehicle View on the infotainment system homepage, press the button on the steering wheel or shift into Reverse.

- Landscape mode:
  - On the bottom of the infotainment touchscreen, tap the icon for front, rear, right, or left view. View of the selected area is displayed in the image section.



  - In the single front and rear views, double-tap the image section to switch to a 180° perspective displayed in full screen.
  - Tap the radar icon in the panoramic view to enable the radar display, and tap it again to disable it. When the radar display is enabled, a warning is displayed as the vehicle is approaching an obstacle.
- Slowly tap the body image on the right to switch between transparent and non-transparent vehicle images.



- After the vehicle starts, the image before last power-off is displayed on the transparent panoramic view screen. Foreign bodies shown may be inconsistent with the actual ones in the underbody and surrounding blind areas. The underbody image update will begin only after the vehicle has started to run and will be complete when the vehicle has been driven beyond its length.

WARNING

- This system uses wide-angle fisheye cameras, so the object on the display screen may appear somewhat deformed in comparison with the actual object.
- The panoramic view system is only to be used for parking/driving assistance. It is not safe to rely solely on this system to park or drive the vehicle, because there are some blind spots in front of and behind the vehicle. The surroundings of the vehicle should be observed in other ways during the parking/driving process, so as to avoid accidents.

WARNING

- When the side mirrors are not extended in place, do not use the panoramic view system; and when the panoramic view system is used for parking/driving, ensure that all the car doors are closed.
- The distance to an object displayed on the panoramic view screen may be different from the distance perceived subjectively, especially when the object is closer to the vehicle. Assess the distance in various ways.
- Cameras are installed above the front bumper, the lower parts of the side mirrors, and the rear license plate. Make sure the cameras are unobstructed.
- To prevent affecting camera performance, avoid spraying directly on the cameras when washing the vehicle body with high-pressure water. Wipe any water or dust off the camera in time.
- Protect the cameras from any impact to prevent damage or malfunction.
- After the vehicle is powered on, if you press the around view button or shift into Reverse while the infotainment system is not fully activated, the output on the around view screen will be delayed or the screen will flash. This is a normal part of the camera power-on process.
- When the vehicle runs at a low speed, the transparent panoramic view function is affected by speed fluctuation or multiple stops, so there will be misalignment between the images below the

WARNING

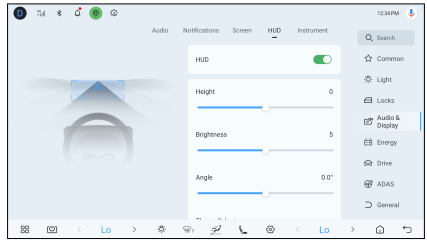
vehicle and that outside the vehicle.

Head-up Display (HUD)*

Head-up Display (HUD): HUD projects important information, including vehicle speed, speed limit, ACC, lane departure, and BSD, into the driver's field of view on the front windscreen. It improves driving safety by preventing the driver from frequently changing the focus of eyes.

How to Use

- The user can enable or disable the head-up display function on the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → Audio & Display → HUD.



- By factory default, HUD is on and the image is displayed. When it is disabled, no HUD image is displayed. The system defaults to the previous settings when the vehicle starts.
  - Height adjusting: adjust the height of HUD virtual image in between -10 and 10. A total of 21 values are available, and the default value is 0.
  - Brightness adjusting: adjust the brightness of HUD virtual image in between 1 and 10. A total of 11 values are available, and the default value is 5.

- Angle adjusting: adjust the angle of HUD virtual image. A total of 11 values are available, and the default value is 0.0°.
- Theme settings select Classic (default setting) or Snow theme according to the environment of the vehicle.
- Settings optional for display: safe driving assistance or navigation. They are enabled by default. Tap the button to select the setting for HUD display. Tap the button again to deselect and close the item.

CAUTION

- Make sure that the head-up display is unobstructed.
- Wipe the dust on the HUD dust-proof board with a soft cotton cloth or paper towel.
- Make sure no water or other liquid flow into the opening of the head-up display.

Tyre Pressure Monitoring

System Descriptions

- The Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS) consists of a tyre pressure monitoring module, a tyre pressure monitoring control module, and a display. It monitors tyre pressure in real time and issues visual and sound alarms, improving safety and comfort and reducing tyre wear and power consumption due to insufficient tyre pressure.
- You can access the instrument cluster menu by pressing the button on the steering wheel, navigate to the driving information bar by pressing the ◁ and ▷ buttons, and then select the tyre pressure display screen using the scroll button.
- For standard pressure values, see the vehicle data in section Specifications.

Basic Functions

- Power-on alarm
  - If tyre pressure is low when the vehicle is powered off, a low pressure alarm prompts the driver to inflate when the vehicle is powered back on.
- Low tyre pressure alarm
  - When the system is running, once any of the four tyres has a pressure below 80% of the standard tyre pressure, the TPMS gives a low tyre pressure alarm within one minute and indicates the tyre position.
  - In that case, inflate the tyre to the standard pressure. The alarm stops when the tyre pressure is above 95% of the standard tyre pressure.
- Fault alarm
  - When the system is running, an alarm is given if it is running.
- Real-time tyre pressure display
  - When the TPMS is running, the pressure value of each tyre is displayed.
- Vehicle speed range in which the TPMS operates normally: 19–99 mph (30–160 km/h).

Alarm Display Descriptions

Tyre pressure fault warning light:

Alarm	Display Mode	Solution
Low tyre pressure	1. The tyre pressure fault warning light turns on. 2. The tyre pressure value turns yellow.	Check for slow air leakage and inflate the tyre to the correct pressure value.
Abnormal signal.	1. The tyre pressure fault warning light flashes and then is steady on. 2. The tyre pressure value displayed is: Abnormal signal.	Check the tyre pressure monitoring module, and for any surrounding electromagnetic source nearby.
System failure	1. The tyre pressure fault warning light flashes and then is steady on. 2. Message prompt: Check tyre pressure monitoring system. 3. The tyre pressure value displayed is: Abnormal signal.	Check the tyre pressure monitoring module and tyre pressure control module, or change them if necessary.

Precautions

- The running time of the tyre pressure monitoring module is related to the daily travel distance and other factors.
- The monitoring module regularly transmits tyre pressure and other information to the display. Therefore, if the tyre pressure drops suddenly or there is a flat tyre, the monitoring module will not transmit data to the display until the next monitoring. In this case, the vehicle may be out of control. If there is a flat tyre and monitoring fails to inform, or if you feel that there are some tyre problems, stop driving immediately instead of waiting for the display to signal an alarm.
- Incorrectly installed monitoring module affects the air tightness of the tyre. It is recommended that the installation and replacement of the pressure monitoring module be carried out by professional technicians of a BYD authorised dealer or service provider in accordance with the requirements of the installation manual.
- To change tyre position or replace tyre pressure monitoring module, first rematch the entire tyre monitoring system. It is recommended to have this done by the professional technicians from a BYD authorised dealer or service provider; otherwise, system failure may occur.
- Since tyre pressure varies with regional temperatures, inflate or deflate the tyres according to the values displayed on the instrument cluster and the standard tyre pressure values.

- TPMS applies wireless transmission, which may lead to poor reception under serious interference.

WARNING

- The system does not stop vehicle travelling in the event of abnormal tyre pressure. Therefore, each time before driving, ensure that the tyre pressure conforms to the requirements specified by the manufacturer. If not, do not drive, otherwise, vehicle damage or personal injuries may occur.
- If pressure is found to be abnormal while driving, check the tyre pressure immediately. If the low pressure warning light comes on, avoid sharp turns or emergency braking, and reduce vehicle speed, pull it over to the kerb and stop as soon as possible. Driving with low tyre pressure can cause permanent damage to tyres and increase the likelihood of tyre scrapping. Serious tyre damage can lead to traffic accidents, resulting in serious injuries or deaths.

Acoustic Vehicle Alert System (AVAS)

The Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System (AVAS) refers to the broadcast to pedestrians near the vehicle when it is travelling at low speed.

- When driving forward:
  - The broadcast volume increases with vehicle speed in the range of 0 mph<V≤12 mph(20 km/h<V≤30 km/h).
  - The broadcast volume decreases with vehicle speed in the range of 12 mph<V≤18 mph(20 km/h<V≤30 km/h).
  - At speeds above 18 mph(30 km/h), the broadcast sound stops automatically.
- The vehicle makes a continuous and balanced prompt sound when moving in reverse.
- To set the engine sound simulator, slide down the top status bar on the infotainment touchscreen to display the shortcut screen.

WARNING

- If the AVAS prompt sound cannot be heard when driving at a low speed, stop the vehicle in a relatively safe and quiet place, open a window, then drive at a constant speed of 12 mph(20 km/h) in D gear and check whether an audio prompt can be heard from the front of the vehicle. If it is confirmed that there is no sound, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.

Driver Monitoring System (DMS)

Driver Monitoring System (DMS), including fatigue and distraction monitoring, is designed to monitor the driver's driving status with a camera and assess it. Based on the assessment, the system alerts the driver in a timely manner. The monitoring data will not be saved or uploaded to the server but instead will be deleted immediately after the assessment is complete.

How to Use

- The camera for DMS is mounted on the A-pillar of the driver's side. Make sure the camera is unobstructed before use, or DMS may not function normally.
- To enable or disable driver fatigue or distraction warning (both enabled by factory default), go to infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → Vehicle → Cabin Perception. By default, the system is switched on each time when the vehicle is powered on.

Driver Fatigue Warning

- With the vehicle speed meeting the system activation condition, driver fatigue warning enabled and the camera unobstructed, when the system detects signs of fatigue, such as closing eyes, blinking and yawning, it alerts the driver through a visual warning on the instrument cluster, voice assistant, or an audible alarm.

Driver Distraction Warning

- With the vehicle speed meeting the system activation condition, driver distraction warning enabled and the camera unobstructed, when the system detects signs of distraction. For example, When the driver’ s gaze is averted from the forward road and specific system conditions are met. It alerts the driver promptly through a visual warning on the instrument cluster, or through intelligent voice or an audible alarm.

REMINDER

- Clean the DMS camera lens with a clean and soft cloth and exercise caution to prevent any damage to the surface.

Precautions

- The driver monitoring system is only an auxiliary system and is not capable of effective recognition and alarm-raising in all situations. The driver must maintain situational awareness, drive safely, and adhere to traffic laws
- The proper functioning and accuracy of the driver monitoring assistance can be affected by a number of situations, including but not limited to:
  - Driver monitoring systems are disabled.
  - The camera is directly exposed to strong light.
  - Part of the driver's face is exposed to light or the complete facial features are hard to recognise.
  - The driver wears infrared-blocking glasses or glasses with thick lenses.
  - The driver wears a mask or something that covers the face.
  - The driver is not properly seated or the driver's face is in the blind spot of the camera.

WARNING

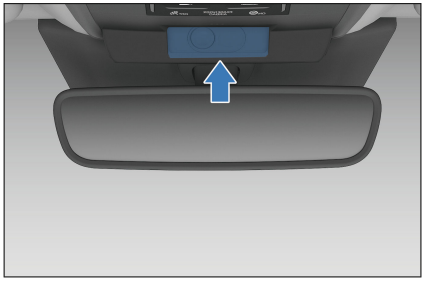
- Please pull over to a safe location and rest immediately when you feel tyred or driver fatigue warning.

Occupants Monitoring System(OMS)

Occupants monitoring system (OMS) is used to capture the scene in the cabin through the cockpit monitoring camera, collect the cockpit image information, analyze the behavior and intention of passengers, and assist in improving the safety of passengers, including the detection of seat belt fastening in the wrong way. The details are subject to your actual vehicle configuration.

How to Use

- The cameras of this feature mounted under the reading lights. Make sure the cameras are unobstructed before using.



Functions

- Seat belt wrong fastening detection
  - When the driver buckles the seat belt, the system will automatically detect the driver's behavior of wearing the seat belt in the wrong way, and remind the driver through the alarm sound and the instrument pop-up window.
  - When there is an alarm sound, the instument cluster will pop up a window to allow the user to choose to mute. If the state of the buckle remains unchanged, the system will be on mute all the time.

CAUTION

- The proper functioning and accuracy of OMS can be affected by a number of situations, including but not limited to:
  - The camera is blocked.
  - The camera is directly exposed to strong light.
  - Exceed the valid range of function.

CAUTION

  - The safety belt is covered by a large area (such as thick clothes, long hair, etc.).
  - The similarity between the color of clothes and the color of seat belts is too high.
- Clean the OMS camera lens with a clean and soft cloth and exercise caution to prevent any damage to the surface.
- In each journey, if the buckle state remains unchanged after the system detects that the safety belt is worn correctly, the system will maintain its use state.

REMINDER

- During use, the camera data is processed in the vehicle and deleted immediately after judgment. It will not be saved or uploaded to the server. Please feel free to use..

Child Presence Detection (CPD)

CPD acts as an auxiliary alert system to notify of possible child occupancy. After the vehicle is powered off, CPD is performed if any door is opened and then closed or locked. When an occupant is detected, the vehicle will trigger visual and audible warnings, and activate climate control to adjust temperature. Alerts can be disabled via door opening.

Activation Conditions

CPD is activated when all the following conditions are met:

- The vehicle is powered off.

- The driver’ s door is opened and then closed.
- All doors are closed.
- CPD is enabled on the infotainment touchscreen.
- CPD system has no fault.

How to Use

- To access the CPD setting interface, go to infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → Vehicle → Cabin Perception. Four options are provided: OFF, ON, Standard, and Delay.
- By default, CPD is enabled with standard alarm mode each time when the vehicle is powered on (Australia/New Zealand).
- Upon each power-up, the vehicle retains the driver’ s last configuration (available in Southeast Asia).
- OFF: CPD function is disabled.
- Delay: the alarm starts in about 5 minutes.

System Response

Initial alarm

- When CPD enabled with standard alarm mode, if life presence is detected after the vehicle is powered off and locked, the initial alarm (light flashing and honking) starts within 10 seconds and will last for about 6 seconds.
- When CPD enabled with standard alarm mode, if life presence is detected after the vehicle is powered off but unlocked, the initial alarm (light flashing and honking) starts within 5 minutes and will last for about 6 seconds.
- When CPD enabled with delay alarm mode, if life presence is detected after the vehicle is powered off and the doors are closed, the initial alarm (light flashing and honking) starts within 5 minutes and will last for about 6 seconds.

Escalated alarm

- If not canceled, the alarm (light flashing and honking) escalates after 80 seconds and will last for about 25 minutes.
- The A/C will be switched on three minutes after alarm escalation, and will keep running for about 30 minutes.

Alarm cancelling

- When alarm is triggered, tap the button on the infotainment touchscreen to cancel the alarm. The setting will remain effective until the vehicle is powered down and on again.
- When alarm is triggered, unlock or open any door to cancel the alarm.

Message delivery

- The user will receive messages in the BYD App and email of every initial alarm, escalated alarm and other system responses.

WARNING

- The system notifies users with light flashing, honking, App message prompts, email message, and A/C operation to reduce the harm to the presence in the vehicle. However, CPD is only an auxiliary system and cannot ensure effective recognition and alarm-raising in all situations. The user must remain alarm at all times and fully responsible for the lives in the vehicle.
- When a reminder is provided, check whether any life presence has been locked inside the vehicle

WARNING

promptly to avoid further safety incident.

CAUTION

- CPD is only an auxiliary reminder system, and cannot ensure every alarm-raising when life presence is left in the vehicle. The user must remain alarm (especially for child) at all times and fully responsible for the lives in the vehicle.
- The alarm may be given for adults, pets, or other lives detected.
- The alarm may be given for moving objects detected.
- The alarm cannot be canceled by unlocking the vehicle remotely from the app.
- The system may not be able to trigger an escalated alarm or switch on the A/C if the SOC is low. Keeping the vehicle at high SOC is recommended.

Driving Safety Systems

For better driving safety, the following driving safety systems works automatically based on driving conditions. However, these systems only provide assistance, and excessive reliance on them is not recommended.

Intelligent Power Braking System

- The intelligent power braking system is an advanced decoupled electro-hydraulic brake system, incorporating vacuum booster, electronic vacuum pump, Antilock Braking System (ABS)/Electronic Stability Controller (ESC)system and other features.
- The system assists vehicle braking according to the driver's demands and improves vehicle stability, comfort, and the recovery efficiency of brake energy.

Vehicle Dynamics Control (VDC)

When the vehicle turns suddenly while driving, if the vehicle swerves from the driver's normal lane, the VDC will correct the situation by engaging brakes to the corresponding wheels to help the driver control skidding and maintain directional stability.

Traction Control System (TCS)

TCS prevents the drive wheels from skidding during acceleration by reducing the motor power, and, when necessary, applies braking forces to prevent drive wheels from spinning. It makes it easy for the vehicle to start, accelerate, and climb under adverse driving conditions.

WARNING

- TCS may not work effectively in the following situations:
  - On slippery roads, even if TCS is working properly, it may not be able to control the direction and meet power requirements.
  - Do not drive in conditions where the vehicle may lose its stability and power.

Hill Hold Control (HHC)

After the brake pedal is released, HHC maintains brake pressure for one second to prevent backward sliding.

Hydraulic Brake Assist (HBA)

When the brake pedal is pressed quickly, HBA recognises that the vehicle is in emergency mode and actively improves

the brake pressure. This allows ABS to intervene more quickly, effectively shortening the brake distance.

Controller Deceleration Parking (CDP)*

When you engage the EPB, the CDP function starts working so that the vehicle brakes at a constant deceleration (0.4 g if EPB is engaged but the brake pedal is not pressed, and 0.8 g if EPB is engaged and the brake pedal is pressed) until the vehicle stops. The function stops working when the EPB is released.

Hill Descent Control (HDC)

Working principle: HDC is a value-added function of the ESC system to improve vehicle comfort, with the main purpose of assisting in downhill slow driving through active braking.

- To enable or disable HDC:
  - Enable or disable HDC in ⚙ → Vehicle → Intelligent Assist → Hill Descent Control.
  - When the speed is below 24 mph(38 km/h), you can also enable HDC by pressing the HDC switch. When the function is enabled, its status indicator on the instrument cluster is steady on.
- Press the HDC switch again to disable the function, and the indicator on the instrument cluster turns off. HDC also automatically stops when the speed exceeds about 40 mph(65 km/h).
- When HDC is working, ABS is activated when the wheel slip exceeds the ABS triggering threshold, allowing you to safely and smoothly go downhill, or even reverse.
- HDC speed control:
  - HDC works at speeds between 7 mph(11 km/h) and 24 mph(38 km/h), within which you can adjust the speed by pressing/releasing the accelerator or brake pedal. The vehicle speed is set when the accelerator or brake pedal is released. The HDC status indicator flashes to indicate that the HDC is working.
- HDC malfunction:
  - In some special cases such as long downhill, the HDC function may be temporarily disabled due to the high temperature of the brake.
  - A "Please check the HDC system" message is displayed for safety. To restore the function, stop the vehicle until the brake temperature cools down.

ESC operation instructions

Intelligent power braking system has the following new functions compared with the original ESC system:

- Brake assist mode
  - The brake assist mode is used to adjust the brake pedal feel. The relation curve between the brake pedal depth and the vehicle deceleration varies across different modes for the driver to choose their preferred pedal feel.
  - To set the steering assist mode, go to ⚙ → Vehicle → Driving Control → Brake assist mode, and select the Comfort or Sport mode.
- Comfort parking
  - Comfort parking function: When the vehicle decelerates to stop in a non-emergency situation, the intelligent power braking system reduces the stop-instant suspension pitch and impact by controlling the brake pressure of the four brakes, providing a smooth stop feeling for the driver.
  - Enable or disable this function in the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ →

Vehicle → Driving Control → Comfort Parking.

- After the function is triggered, the braking distance may increase by 0.066-0.164 feets(2-5 cm). Increase the distance from the vehicle or obstacle ahead accordingly before stopping your vehicle.

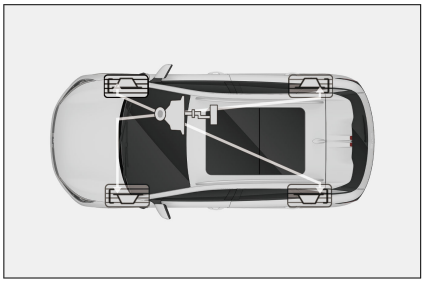
- Brake disc wiping
  - Brake disc wiping function: When the wiper switch is on, the intelligent power braking system applies a small brake pressure to all four brakes so that pads come into contact with discs to remove the water film from the discs. This shortens brake response time and braking distance.
  - As long as the system detects rain or the wiper ON signal, the brake discs are repeatedly wiped at certain intervals to improve safety.
- ESC working
  - If there is a risk of skidding or backsliding when the vehicle starts on a slope, or if either drive wheel is spinning, the ESC indicator flashes to indicate that ESC system is working.
- Disabling ESC
  - If the vehicle gets stuck in snow or mud, ESC may reduce power output from the motor to the wheels, where the system should be turned off to get out of the jam.
- Turning off ESC
  - To turn off the ESC system, press the physical button or go to the infotainment touchscreen. ESC also checks its operating status in real time. If the ESC OFF switch is pressed while ESC is working, it completes the active intervention control this time rather than executes the "OFF" command immediately. ESC is disabled only after the intervention control is complete.
  - Some ESC functions may be re-enabled if you press the ESC OFF switch again or the vehicle speed exceeds the threshold of 50 mph(80 km/h). ESC may be re-enabled only if the ESC is not in a vehicle dynamic intervention state.
- ESC OFF switch mis-operation*
  - ESC is considered to be mis-operated if the ESC OFF switch is pressed and held for more than 10 seconds. In that case, all internal ESC functions continue to work.
- Restarting ESC after the motor is powered off
  - When the ESC system has been turned off, restarting the motor will automatically restart ESC system.
- ESC start and speed linkage
  - Although already turned off, the ESC system can start on its own if the vehicle becomes extremely unstable as the speed increases and exceeds the threshold of 50 mph(80 km/h).
- When ESC system is activated
  - If the ESC fault indicator flashes, drive with caution.
- When ESC system is disabled
  - Be careful when ESC is disabled, and drive at speeds suitable for road conditions. The ESC system ensures vehicle stability and its driving force. Never turn it off unless necessary.
- Replacing tyres
  - Make sure all tyres are of the same size, brand, tread pattern, and total load. In addition, be sure to inflate tyres to the recommended pressure.

- Neither ABS nor ESC will work properly if the vehicle is fitted with different tyres.
- For details on tyre or wheel replacement, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.

- Tyre and suspension handling
  - The use of any defective tyre or modified suspension affects the driving safety system and may cause the system to fail.

Anti-lock Braking System (ABS)

- The ABS hydraulic system has two separate circuits. Each circuit runs diagonally through the vehicle (the right front wheel brake is connected to the left rear wheel brake). If one circuit fails, two wheels can still be braked.
- ABS helps maintain steering control by preventing the wheels from locking or skidding when brake is engaged suddenly or on slippery roads.



- When the front tyres skid, there is no steering control, which means that the vehicle still moves forward even though the steering wheel is turned. ABS helps prevent locking and maintain steering control since pulsating prompt brake is much faster than human reaction.
- Never pulsate the brake pedal; otherwise, ABS may malfunction. While steering away from danger, a firm and steady pressure should always be maintained on the brake pedal for the ABS to work. This is what is sometimes referred to as "a firm step and a precise turn".
- When the ABS is working, the brake pedal will vibrate, which may produce noise. This is normal because the ABS is pulsating the brake quickly. How quickly ABS works depends on tyre driving force (adhesion).

Important safety tips

- ABS does not reduce the time and distance required to stop the vehicle. It only helps control steering when braking. Please always keep a safe distance from other vehicles.
- ABS cannot prevent skidding caused by sudden direction change, such as trying to make a sharp turn or change lanes suddenly. Always drive carefully at a safe speed, regardless of road and weather conditions.
- ABS does not prevent decrease in stability either. When applying the brake in an emergency, the steering should be moderate. A large or sharp turn during the driving can cause the vehicle to swerve into oncoming traffic or run off the road.
- When running on soft or uneven surfaces (such as gravel or snow), a vehicle with ABS may require a longer braking distance than a vehicle without ABS. In such cases, slow down and keep a long distance from other vehicles.

WARNING

- ABS cannot work effectively under the following conditions:
  - Tyres with inadequate grip are used (for example, excessively

WARNING

worn tyres used on snow-covered roads).

- The vehicle skids when driving at a high speed on slippery roads.

CAUTION

- If the ABS warning light is still on while the brake system warning light turns on, stop the vehicle in a safe place immediately and contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.
- ABS cannot prevent skidding caused by sudden direction change, such as trying to make a sharp turn or change lanes suddenly. Always drive carefully at a safe speed, regardless of road and weather conditions.
- ABS does not prevent decrease in stability either. When applying the brake in an emergency, the steering should be moderate. A large or sharp turn during the driving can cause the vehicle to swerve into oncoming traffic or run off the road.

Intelligence Torque Adaption Control System*

Intelligence Torque Adaption Control (iTAC) System* The iTAC system employs a unique control architecture and algorithm that evaluates data including steering angle and motor speed and thus identifies the driver's driving needs and vehicle status. The iTAC system proactively adjusts the drive torque of the front and rear axles in real time so that the driving state of the vehicle adapts to the driver's needs with better performance in complex road conditions.

- Enable the function by the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → Drive → Driving Control.

REMINDER

- When braking is detected, be it through the driver pressing the brake pedal or ESC coming into action, iTAC exits for the priority of braking.

WARNING

- This function is not designed for unbridled driving. Make sure the braking system works normally in the following situations:
  - Unbridled driving behaviours such as drifting, and driving on continuous bends;
  - Driving on slippery, muddy, sandy, snowy or icy roads.
  - Driving on roads with multiple potholes or on uneven roads.
  - Driving on bumpy roads.

05 IN-VEHICLE DEVICES

Infotainment System.....182
A/C System.....192
BYD App.....197
Storage.....198
Other Devices.....200

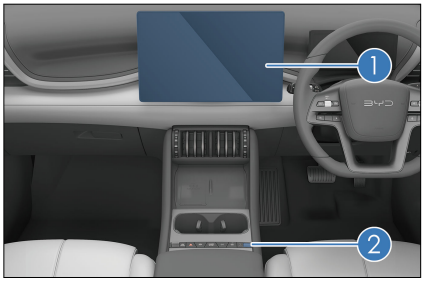
Infotainment System

Infotainment Touchscreen

When the ignition is on, the initial screen is displayed for several seconds and the infotainment system starts to work. To better experience infotainment functions, such as BYD Assistant, APP and Internet calls, the system must be used after network connection.

① Infotainment touchscreen

② Scroll button



Reset to factory settings

- The infotainment system can be reset to the factory settings by tapping the infotainment touchscreen → Application centre → System.
- This function factory resets the infotainment system.
  - During the process, do not touch any infotainment button or turn off the power supply, or errors may occur.
  - The process takes two to five minutes, please wait patiently.

WARNING

- Do not use a high-power inverter in the vehicle, as this may cause infotainment system malfunction.
- Do not format or root the device, as this may cause infotainment system or vehicle malfunction.

CAUTION

- To prevent damage to the touchscreen
  - Touch the screen gently. If there is no response, remove your finger from the screen, then touch it again.
  - Clean the screen with a soft damp cloth. Do not use any cleaning product.
- Infotainment Touchscreen
  - When the screen temperature is low, the image displayed may be darker or the system may work slightly slower than normal.
  - The screen may be dark or difficult to see when you are wearing sunglasses. In that case, change the viewing angle or take off the sunglasses.
- The touchscreen interface shown here is for reference only.

Infotainment System

- A warning is displayed when the infotainment system starts for the first time. Tap Agree to enter the system.
- When the infotainment system is started, the screen is automatically displayed, containing status bar, navigation bar, and desktop widgets.

- Status bar

  The top status bar displays the function status icons.

  Icons in the status bar include two types: operable* and display only.

- Shortcut menu

  Swipe down from the top of the touchscreen to open the shortcut menu. It includes convenient operations, brightness and volume adjustments, and scene mode* functionality modules.

- Navigation bar

  Long press the navigation bar to bring up the control menu and applications*. You can customise the navigation bar according to your needs.

  - : returns to the previous page or exits the program.
  - : returns to the homepage.

    Touch and hold this button to switch between wallpaper and map desktops base on preferences.
  - : goes to vehicle setting screen.
  - : goes to vehicle setting screen.
  - : Goes to the app list screen*.
  - : tap the button to split screen, and tap a second time to exit.
  - : enables screen saver.

- Task management centre*:

  Swiping up from the bottom of the touchscreen opens the task management centre.

- Desktop widget*:

  The components on the desktop are customised by factory default, and users can add, delete or change the location of widgets according to their preferences.

REMINDER

- The first home screen widget is a fixed component and does not support replacement.

REMINDER

- When the infotainment system malfunctions, upload the fault information in "Practical Tools".
- The loaded application is subject to the actual configuration of the vehicle.

Gas Settings

Vehicle setting of the infotainment system mainly includes: Bluetooth, Network & internet, Notifications, Profiles & accounts, Location, Privacy, Accessibility, Security, Apps, Assistant & Voice, System and Google feature modules:

- Bluetooth: Manage Bluetooth device pairing and connection, support wireless audio transmission and peripheral control.
- Network & internet: Configure Wi-Fi, mobile data, VPN, and hotspot sharing to optimise network connections.
- Notification: Customise app notification priority, display, and DND settings.
- Profile & accounts: Synchronise/Delete the account data, manage cross-device logins and cloud service permissions.
- Location: Control the application location permission switch to view recent location usage records.

- Privacy: Manage app permissions, ad preferences, and access to sensitive data such as camera/microphone.
- Accessibility: Enable accessibility functions such as screen reader and subtitle enlargement to adapt to special needs interaction.
- Security: Set screen lock types, Google Play Protection, and emergency security incident response.
- Apps: View the application storage usage, permission grant status, and default application assignment rules.
- Assistant & voice: Adjust Google Assistant wake-up words, voice matching, and smart home linkage.
- System: Operate software updates, backup and restore, multi-device interconnection, and system-level power saving strategies.
- Google: Manage account-linked services such as search, maps, and ads.

Voice Assistant

Google Voice Assistant*

The Google Assistant, integrated into the in-vehicle infotainment system, uses natural language processing technology to enable users to interact more naturally, helping them control various functions more conveniently, and supporting a wide range of music, podcasts, and other entertainment interactions.

- Vehicle owners can also activate the Google Assistant in three ways when the default voice assistant is set to Google Assistant:
  - Wake it up by saying "OK Google" or "Hey Google".
  - Press the voice button on the steering wheel briefly.
  - Wake up Google Assistant by tapping the Google Assistant app icon.
- Vehicle owners can ask Google Assistant general questions, such as "what’ s on my calendar? "what's on my calendar"; "read my message"、"play some music"、"Navigate to Starbucks"、"turn on the heater" and voice interaction functions for communication, media, navigation, and vehicle control modules. The vechicle control system then performs the recognised instruction.
- If the current default voice assistant is not Google Assistant, the wake word and steering control button will not activate Google Assistant. Vehicle owners can select the desired default voice assistant by pressing and holding the voice icon or through settings → Assistant & Voice → Digital assistant app → Default digital assistant app.

Intelligent Voice Assistant*

- BYD Assistant is an intelligent voice assistant that responds to your voice commands, such as requesting navigation, playing music/radio/DAB*, making a phone call, and controlling in-vehicle devices.
- When the default voice assistant is set to the BYD Assistant, vehicle owners can activate it in three ways: Saying the wake word "Hi, BYD"; Press the voice button on the steering wheel briefly; Tap the icon on the infotainment touchscreen.
- Your voice commands can be recognised after system wake-up. Then, you can give the instructions like:" Go home（Need to set a quick location）"、"Play music"、"Start DAB+"、"Make a call（Need to access the contact list and connect

to phone Bluetooth）"、"Set the temperature to 23 degree"、"Turn on the seat ventilation for the driver",etc. Intelligent voice assistant then performs the recognised instruction.

- If the current default voice assistant is not the BYD Voice Assistant, the wake word and steering control button will not activate the BYD Voice Assistant. Vehicle owners can select the desired default voice assistant by press and hold the voice icon or through Settings → Assistant & Voice → Digital Assistant App → Default Digital Assistant App page.

Google Play

- Google Play is Google's official app store and digital content platform for Android devices, providing users with diversified digital services such as apps, games, e-books, movies, and music. As one of the world's largest mobile app distribution platforms, it covers millions of apps and games, supporting users to enjoy one-stop entertainment, learning, and life services, and is a core component of the Android ecosystem.

Gestures and Responses

Gestures and associated system responses are:

- Tapping: opens applications, selects functions, clicks icons on the touchscreen, or types characters.
- Dragging: touching and dragging an icon, thumbnail, or preview to the target position to change its location.
- Swiping: operational on homepage and app screens.
- Double-tapping: zooms in an image or shows full screen. Double-tap again to return.
- Spreading/pinching: zooms in or out an image with two fingers.
- Swiping left/right with three fingers: regulates A/C fan speed.
- Swiping up/down with three fingers: regulates A/C temperature.
- Swiping down from the top of the touchscreen: opens the shortcut menu.
- Swiping up from the bottom of the touchscreen: opens the task management centre.
- Sliding from the left/right of the touchscreen: returns to the last screen.

Bluetooth Call

Connection

1. On Bluetooth Call screen, tap Please connect Bluetooth to establish connection.
2. Tap ‘Scan for device’ to search for available devices.
3. Pair the available device, and make sure the paring code displayed on your phone is consistent with the code on the touchscreen.
4. Set Bluetooth when connection is complete.

Bluetooth call

Go to the dialing screen when Bluetooth is connected.

- Tap Contacts, Call log, and Missed calls, or use dial keypad to make a call.
- Slide the call card upwards or tap any empty space to minimise the dialing screen.

- In panoramic view screen, a small window pops up to inform driver of a call.

OTA Update

- The vehicle supports over-the-air (OTA) updates. You can update your software to the latest by tapping infotainment touchscreen → Application centre → System → Version update.
- When available, new updates are prompted on the infotainment touchscreen. You can update immediately, schedule an update or use mobile phone update according to your use of the vehicle.

CAUTION

- Do not move the vehicle during the update.
- Before the update, ensure that the vehicle is in Park, at a safe place with a stable network connection.
- Make sure your vehicle is fully charged before the upgrade.
- Do not install any third-party devices in the OBD port before or during the upgrade.
- Make sure the vehicle has enough battery power before the update, as it cannot be charged or discharged during the process.
- During the OTA upgrade, all functions are not available except the smart key/microswitch unlocking/locking, interior light switch, hazard warning light, and window switches.
- If the OTA upgrade fails, try it again. If it also fails, contact a

CAUTION

BYD authorised dealer or service provider for handling.

Phone Projection

Phone projection* allows you to connect a smartphone to the vehicle and interact with certain mobile apps on the infotainment touchscreen.

WARNING

- Drive safely. Avoid any possible distractions, or accidents could result.

REMINDER

- Make sure the vehicle is in Park with the infotainment system turned on, and allow time to set up the phone projection app before you start your drive.
- The initial setup process is to be completed on the phone or the infotainment touchscreen: check prompts on the phone for security information, accept privacy policies, and grant necessary permissions.
- Wired connections require a connection between a certified USB cable to the USB data transfer port on the vehicle.
- When connecting wirelessly, pair your phone and the vehicle via Bluetooth. It is better to keep your phone's Bluetooth, Wi-Fi, and Location Services turned on in this process.
- For the connection to be stable, it is better to change the vehicle

REMINDER

hotspot name to avoid name-related issues.

- Ensure your phone is in range of your mobile data network and has an active data plan.
- Availability of services shown varies by country and language, and subscriptions for services may be required.

Apple CarPlay

Connecting with a cable

- **To activate the connection,** Plug an iPhone to a USB data transfer port on the vehicle with a certified USB cable. Apple CarPlay is then connected. The phone projected is shown on the device list.
- **To deactivate the connection,** unplug the iPhone USB cable to stop Apple CarPlay. If you have chosen to enable wireless CarPlay, the phone and the vehicle pair automatically to allow for future wireless connections.

Connecting wirelessly*

- **To activate the connection,** do as follows.

  1. Go to the infotainment touchscreen → application screen, tap the Apple CarPlay icon , and pair your iPhone to the vehicle as prompted.
  2. After that, follow on-screen instructions to connect Apple CarPlay.

- **To deactivate the connection,** choose any of the following ways.

  - On the vehicle, turn off the vehicle hotspot.
  - Turn on vehicle Wi-Fi to let the vehicle hotspot off.
  - In the connected device list, tap **Delete** or **Disconnect** to disconnect the current device.
  - In the Bluetooth list, delete the device projected.
  - Connect the Bluetooth of the current device.
  - Turn off the vehicle.
  - On your phone, delete this CarPlay device.
  - Turn off your phone Wi-Fi.

REMINDER

- Note that stopping the current connection will not have other CarPlay devices connected automatically.

Reconnecting Apple CarPlay

- Disconnected wired Apple CarPlay will not automatically restore. You have to unplug and replug the USB cable for this purpose.
- Wireless Apple CarPlay, if abnormally disconnected, automatically try to reconnect.

Switching between Apple CarPlay and built-in infotainment system

- To exit Apple CarPlay user interface, tap the BYD icon on Apple CarPlay's home screen.
- To access the Apple CarPlay user interface, tap the Apple CarPlay icon on the infotainment system's application screen.
- When the connected device list has only one Apple CarPlay history, tapping the icon automatically activates the connection.

- When there are multiple device histories suitable for projection, tapping the Apple CarPlay icon navigates to the device list. Select the one you want to use.

Switching between devices

- Access the connected device list by tapping the connected device icon on the shortcut menu or by going to ⚙ → **Connection** → **Connected Devices**.
- By using the list, you can only switch to a wireless device. This means you get a prompt if selecting another wireless device, but you will need to unplug and replug the USB cable to switch to a wired device.
- Connecting the USB port of the phone being connected wirelessly—which starts charging only—will not trigger the switching prompt, but connecting that of another phone will.

Possible issues

- **Checking your phone**
  - Use a phone that is in proper conditions. Apple CarPlay may often freeze on older iPhone models or earlier iOS versions.
  - A smooth cellular network is necessary. Sluggish network connections could cause apps to lag.
  - Apple CarPlay may disconnect by signal interference in a complex network environment.
- **Checking connections with the vehicle**
  - For wired connections, be sure to use the data transfer port, and preferably a MFi-certified or genuine iPhone cable.
  - For wireless connections, verify your phone settings:
    - Bluetooth has been turned on.
    - Wi-Fi has been turned on and Auto-Join of the vehicle hotspot toggled on.
    - Wireless Carplay has been selected at the very first Apple CarPlay connection. In case you do not know, navigate on your iPhone to **Settings** → **General** → **Carplay**, select the vehicle you want to reset, then tap **Forget This Car**. Delete your iPhone from the device list on the vehicle. Then reset Apple CarPlay.
- In the event of MFi authentication chip issue or reading error, delete histories and reconnect. If the issue persist, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- The name of the vehicle's Bluetooth or hotspot must be unique.
  - Search on your phone for nearby Bluetooth and hotspots. Make sure that no other devices have the same name as this vehicle to prevent interference.
  - You can change the vehicle Bluetooth or personal hotspot name in the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **System** → **Link**.
- Make sure Siri is on.
- Make sure Apple CarPlay is not restricted.

  If your iPhone is not detected by Apple CarPlay, navigate on the phone to **Settings** → **Screen Time** → **Content & Privacy Restrictions**. If **Content & Privacy Restrictions** is on, tap **Allowed Apps & Features** to make sure that Apple CarPlay is enabled.
- If Apple CarPlay is disconnected by turning the vehicle hotspot off,

wireless reconnection cannot be performed within 10 minutes. Try after that.

- You can restart by forgetting history settings:

  On your iPhone, navigate to **Settings** → **General** → **Carplay**, select the vehicle you want to reset, then tap **Forget This Car**. In the meantime, delete this phone from the vehicle's device list.

- If the wireless connection fails after you end a wired connection by unplugging the USB cable, clear CarPlay device information on your iPhone or restart the phone.

- For available regions of Apple CarPlay, visit https://www.apple.com/ios/feature-availability/#apple-carplay.

Android Auto

Connecting with a cable

- **To activate the connection,** plug an Android Auto-compatible phone to one of the vehicle's USB data transfer port with a certified USB cable and set up as prompted.
- **To deactivate the connection,** unplug the USB cable or. Alternatively, you can end the connection or delete the projected phone in **Connected Devices**.

  1. Plug a smartphone to a USB data transfer port on the vehicle with a certified USB cable.
  2. Follow the on-screen instructions to set up Android Auto.

Connecting wirelessly

- **To activate the connection,** do as follows.

  1. Go to infotainment touchscreen → application screen, tap the Android Auto icon , and pair your smartphone to the vehicle as prompted.
  2. After that, follow on-screen instructions to connect Android Auto.

- **To deactivate the connection,** choose any of the following ways.
  - On the vehicle, turn off the vehicle hotspot.
  - Turn on vehicle Wi-Fi to let the vehicle hotspot off.
  - In the connected device list, tap **Delete** or **Disconnect** to disconnect the current device.
  - In the Bluetooth list, delete the device projected.
  - Turning Bluetooth on the vehicle or Wi-Fi on the phone off may stop projection.
  - Turn off the vehicle.
  - On your phone, delete this Android Auto device.

Reconnecting Apple CarPlay

- Disconnected wired Android Auto will not automatically restore. You have to unplug and replug the USB cable for this purpose.
- Wireless Android Auto, if abnormally disconnected, automatically try to reconnect.

Switching between Android Auto and in-vehicle infotainment system

- To exit Android Auto user interface, tap on Android Auto interface.
- To access Android Auto user interface, tap the Android Auto icon on the infotainment system's application screen.

- When the connected device list has only one Android Auto history, tapping the icon automatically activates the connection. Connection prompts will be given if projection conditions are not met.
- When there are multiple device histories suitable for projection, tapping the Android Auto icon navigates to the device list. Select the one you want to use.

Switching between devices

- You can switch between wireless Android Auto devices in the connected device list and get a switching prompt after selecting another device.
- However, this step does not work for switching to a wired device, which requires unplugging and replugging the USB cable.
- Connecting the USB port of the phone being connected wirelessly—which starts charging only—will not trigger the switching prompt, but connecting that of another phone will.

Possible issues

- **Android Auto not working**
  - Make sure your phone supports Google service.
  - Check if the phone operation system supports Android Auto.
    - Common Android Auto compatible devices are Android phones running Android 11.0 or later versions. Consult your phone maker for compatibility.
    - Android Auto is not supported on phones running Android (Go edition).
  - Verify that your phones has the latest version of Android Auto app.
    - Search for Android Auto in phone Settings, then go to the Android Auto screen to view the version.
    - If Android Auto cannot be found, search for it in Google Play to download or update.
  - Check if the connection between your phone and the vehicle is working normally.
    - For wired connections, use a good USB cable to connect the phone and the data transfer port.
    - For wireless connections, make sure Bluetooth and Wi-Fi are turned on on your phone and so do the vehicle Bluetooth and hotspot.
- **Unable to reconnect Android Auto**

  Try the following steps:
  - If you are using a wired connection, change to a genuine USB cable of the phone.
  - For a wireless connection, change the vehicle hotspot name (→ **System** → **Link**) or turn off the Bluetooth and Wi-Fi on the phone and the vehicle, then turn them back on.
  - Restart your phone and the vehicle infotainment system.
  - Delete and reconnect your phone as follows:
    1. Forget previously connected devices on the phone: Go to your Android phone's settings, then navigate to or search for Android Auto settings (on Google phones for example, **Settings** → **Connected devices** → **Connection preferences** → **Android Auto**).

2. Tap **Previously connected cars**, then the three-dot menu button, and select **Forget all cars**.
3. On the vehicle infotainment touchscreen, go to ⚙ → **System** → **Link** → **WLAN**, then delete the device you want to project from the **Connected Devices**.
4. Delete your phone from **Bluetooth Settings**.
5. Reactivate the connection between the phone and the vehicle.

- **Causes to unstable Android Auto connections**
  - For wired Android Auto, typical causes are:
    - Unstable data transmission due to low-quality USB cable
    - Data transmission failure of USB port on the side of the vehicle
    - Data transmission failure of USB port on the side of the phone
    - Unstable connections due to BC1.2 incompatibility of the vehicle USB port
    - Unstable connections due to an old version of Android Auto on the phone
    - High network jitter on rugged roads
  - For wireless Android Auto, they include:
    - Hotspot turned off on the vehicle or Wi-Fi off on the phone
    - complex network environments or weak signals (for example, vehicle hotspot having to compete for frequency resources if various Wi-Fi creators are working concurrently)
    - Bad cellular reception (in a basement or forest, for example)
    - Too old version of Android Auto on the phone (the latest version recommend)
    - Many BYD vehicles nearby with identical hotspot names
    - Faulty or malfunctioning Bluetooth or Wi-Fi module on the phone or the vehicle
- **Apps not available on Android Auto**
  - Not all apps on your phone are compatible with Android Auto, so some of them may not be displayed on the user interface.
  - Mobile network influences app presence or usage on Android Auto. Some apps cannot be opened without mobile network connections.
  - Given the feature or permission differences of apps between Android Auto and the phone, please consult the app providers if you have questions on app usage.

REMINDER

- Android Auto is integrated into phones with Android 10 and above. You do not need to download it.
- For wired or wireless connection, your phone might ask you to update Android Auto before you continue.
- Android Auto connections require the use of Bluetooth on both your phone and the vehicle, which could disconnect other already connected Bluetooth devices.
- Wireless Android Auto connections reply on the use of

REMINDER

Wi-Fi on your phone, which could interrupt Wi-Fi connections on your phone.

- Wireless Android Auto connections reply on the use of vehicle hotspot, which could interrupt Wi-Fi connections on the vehicle. If Wi-Fi remains needed, turn on Wi-Fi again and try to reconnect it. (Performance may vary across systems.)
- For Android Auto compatibility, visit Google website: http://www.android.com/auto/

Trademark statement

- Apple CarPlay is a trademark of Apple Inc.
- Android and Android Auto are trademarks of Google LLC.

Other apps:

Customisation app—Google map

- The map supports location, search, route planning, navigation, and other functions.
- Most interactive controls are on the right side of the map to adapt to real driving. You can search for nearby charging piles, parking lots, and other interested places easily.

External Applications

This infotainment system is an Android-based system that supports the installation of external apps.

- Installing and using external apps:
  1. Download the intended app.
  2. Tap the app file, select Allow App installation to install it.
  3. The installed app is in the app list. Tap to use it.

CAUTION

- Applications that are not officially certified may not work properly.
- Installing a lot of unnecessary software may make the system unusable. Use it with caution.

- Uninstalling external apps:
  1. The installed apps could be found in infotainment touchscreen → APP Centre → Settings → Apps. Select the intended app to uninstall.
  2. Tap Uninstall and confirm.

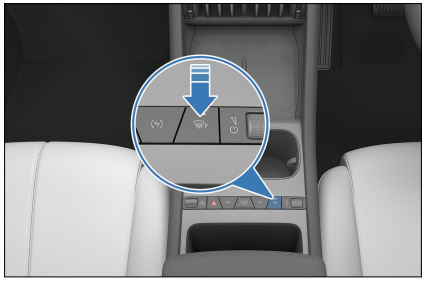
CAUTION

- The default apps included with this infotainment system cannot be uninstalled.

A/C System

Front A/C Panel

Front windscreen defroster



A/C Operation Interface

Front A/C Operation Interface

1	A/C operation interface
2	A/C setting
3	A/C ON/OFF
4	Auto mode
5	Ventilation
6	A/C button
7	Circulation mode
8	Defroster for rear windscreen & side mirrors
9	Front windscreen defroster
10	Max cooling
11	Driver's temperature control
12	Front passenger's temperature control
13	Air distribution
14	Fan speed control
15	Synchronisation button

Function Definition

Auto mode

- Tap the auto button, its indicator lights up on the front A/C panel, the auto mode is activated with the fan speed and air distribution being adjusted automatically.
- The vehicle exits auto control if fan speed or air distribution is set, and other functions remain in auto mode except for those that have been operated.

A/C ON/OFF

- Tap this button to disable the A/C if it is ON.

- Tap this button to enable the A/C if it is OFF.

Max cooling

- Tap this button to switch the A/C to the maximum cooling control mode. The temperature is set to "Lo", the fan speed is set to the maximum, the recirculation mode is activated, and air is directed to face level.
- Tap this button again to exit.

Cooling

- Tap this button to activate the A/C compressor. The compressor then starts to work for cooling.
- Tap this button again to deactivate the function, and the compressor stops working.

Circulation mode

- Tap this button to switch to recirculation mode. Tap it again to switch to fresh air mode.
- When the "auto air recirculation" function is enabled, to ensure air quality in the vehicle and prevent the vehicle exhaust from entering the vehicle, the recirculation mode is switched on automatically after you shift into "P".

Ventilator

- Tap this button to activate A/C ventilation control. The outlet air is natural air.
- Tap this button again to exit.

Temperature controls

- A/C temperature regulation
  - Tap the upside arrow or slide it down to increase the temperature. Tap the downside arrow or slide it up to lower the temperature.
  - When the temperature is set to the lowest, "Lo" is displayed. When it is set to the highest, "Hi" is displayed.

Front windshield defroster

- Tap this button to enter the front windshield defrost mode, distributing air to the front windshield, The corresponding indicator on the front A/C panel lights up.
- Tap this button again to deactivate and exit the front windshield defroster control mode. The corresponding indicator on the front A/C panel turns off.

Defroster for rear windshield and side mirrors

- Tap this button, and the heating panel in side mirrors will quickly clear the side mirrors. The function is automatically deactivated after 15-minute inactivity of the associated button.
- Tap this button a second time to disable the function.
- This function is not for drying raindrops or melting snow.

WARNING

- Do not touch the side mirrors when the rear defroster is activated, because their surfaces will be hot.

REMINDER

- Using the side mirror electric heating defrosting function for a long time may cause the mirror to wear out faster. Turn off the defrost button when it is not needed.

Fan speed control

- Tap the chosen position. The more bars illuminated, the faster the fan speed.

Synchronization button

- Tap this button, the button lights up activating the linked mode for the driver's and front passenger's temperature settings.
- Tap this button again to switch from linked mode to individual mode.
  - Individual Mode: When the Sync button if off, the temperature of the driver's side and front passenger's side can be set separately.
  - Relative Mode: When the Sync button if on, adjust the driver side and front passenger side set temperature at the same time by the driver side temperature control.
- When the front passenger's temperature control is operated in relative mode, the A/C system will automatically switch to individual mode.

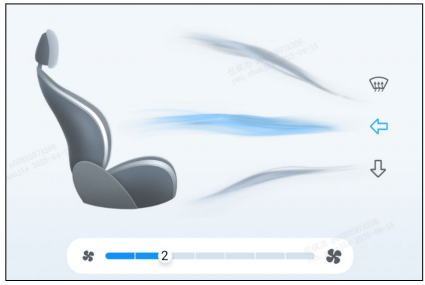
Air distribution

- Tap an icon on the infotainment touchscreen to select the corresponding air distribution mode.
- You can turn on multiple air distribution modes at a time (up to three).
- Adjustments can be made according to the air supply illustration.

Blowing face ← : Air flows to the face level.

Blowing legs ↓ : Air flows to the leg level.

Defrost : Air flows to the front windshield and side windows.



Usage Precautions

- To quickly cool down the interior after long exposure to sunlight, drive for a few minutes with the windows open. to exhaust hot air and speed up A/C cooling.
- To speed up cooling, adjust the temperature to "Lo" and use the recirculation mode for a few minutes.
- To cool down quickly, activate the maximum cooling control mode to enable the best A/C cooling state. This makes the interior environment comfortable quickly.
- If the A/C effect does not achieve expectations, it is recommended to activate auto mode. In this mode, A/C adjusts to the appropriate ventilation temperature, mode and fan speed for comfort needs of passengers.
- Make sure that the air intake grille in front of the windscreen is not blocked (for example, by leafs or snow).
- Avoid blowing cool air onto the windscreen in humid weather. The inner and outer temperature difference can cause glass fogging.
- It is recommended to keep the space under the front seats clear to improve air circulation.
- In cold weather, run the fan at high speed for one minute to remove snow

or moisture from the intake passage, which helps reduce fogging.

- Use recirculation mode for a few minutes for cabin quick heating in cold weather, and switch to fresh air mode to prevent fogging after cabin is heated up.
- In dusty or windy conditions, close all windows, switch on the recirculation mode, and turn on the A/C.
- In heating mode, press the compressor control button to light up the button (turning on the compressor), which can reduce airflow moisture.
- In the ventilation mode, the system introduces the natural wind from outside, which is suitable for spring and autumn.

REMINDER

- A/C odour:
  - It is normal that there may be a damp and moldy smell just after the A/C is turned on. During the operation of the automobile A/C, A/C condensation often remains in the evapourator, and the wet evapourator can easily absorb unfiltered body sweat, smokes, etc., inside the vehicle, resulting in mold on the surface of the wet evapourator surface and odour after long-term fermentation.
- How to prevent and reduce A/C odours:
  - Turn off the A/C and ventilate with natural air before parking to keep the air inside the vehicle relatively dry.
  - Inspect, clean, or replace the A/C filter regularly.

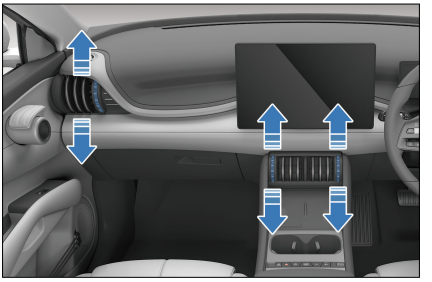
REMINDER

  - Try to keep the cabin clean and fresh.
- If the odour does not reduce after the above operations, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.
- In order to reduce odours from the A/C, if the A/C is already turned on, it is normal that the A/C blower may keep running for a while after the vehicle is powered off and locked. No need to worry about it. This is to dry the condensed water on the surface of the evapourator to prevent odour caused by mold fermentation.

Vents

Front vents

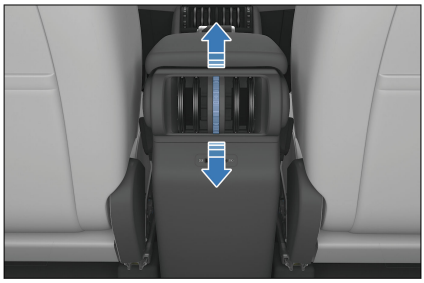
- Move the knob to adjust airflow or to open/close the vent.
- Toggle left/right to adjust airflow direction.



Rear Side Vents

- Move the knob to adjust airflow or to open/close the vent.

- Toggle left/right to adjust airflow direction.



BYD App

BYD App

- BYD app is a mobile application of Internet of Vehicle (IoV) independently developed by BYD. It allows you to control the vehicle remotely and check vehicle conditions, delivering cloud era experience of IoV.
- You can search for "BYD" in application markets such as Google Play and App Store to download and install BYD app.

Account Registration

Once the app is installed, follow the on-screen instructions or the steps below to sign up and log in.

1. Open the app, and then tap Sign up to go to the registration screen.
2. Enter email address registered in BYD authorised dealer, tap Send email to receive verification code, and then enter the code in the app.
3. Set your password in password setting screen to complete the registration, and then the homepage is displayed.

⚠ CAUTION

- Provide the email address registered at the BYD authorised dealer, or registration will fail.
- In the app, select a country or region on upper right corner of the screen. The default setting depends on your phone setting. If it is not where you make the purchase, choose the right one, otherwise your data will not be accessible.

Vehicle Condition and Control

The BYD App homepage provides information and control items of the vehicle.

1. The homepage shows remaining driving range, SOC, vehicle error information, and status of vehicle driving, charging, A/C system, seat heater, seat ventilator, and tyre pressure.
2. Tap lock, unlock, light flashing & honking, or light flashing button to activate the corresponding function.
3. Turn on or off A/C on the app homepage, or tap the A/C card to access other settings, such as temperature regulation.
4. At the bottom of the homepage, tap the icon of seats, doors and windows, or tyres to go to the associated screen and check their status.
5. If you have multiple vehicles on an account, tap the vehicle name in the upper left corner of the screen to switch between vehicles.

CAUTION

- The control function of the app is mainly for remote use. To use this function, ensure your phone and vehicle are connected to the Internet.

Individual Centre and Vehicle Management

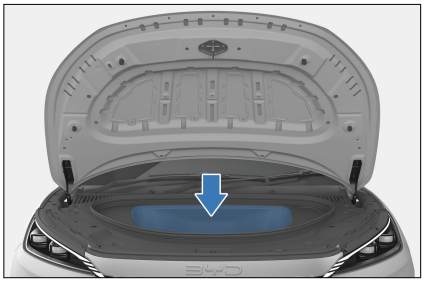
In BYD App screen, tap My Account to go to the individual centre.

- Tap the icon on the top right corner of the vehicle card to edit the vehicle name and license plate number.
- Account and Security: recovers or changes your password.
- Settings: sets message reception, automatic login, and other items.
- About Us: includes privacy policy and information to contact us and give feedback.

Storage

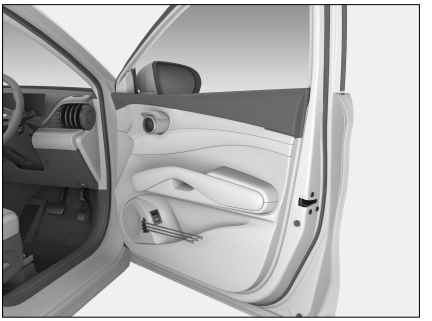
Engine Compartment Storage

- Open the hood to use the engine compartment storage.



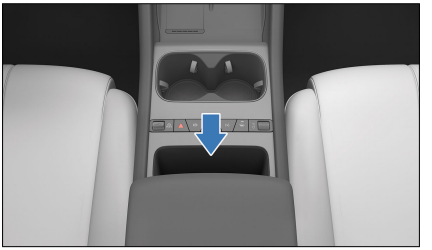
Door Bins

- There is a door bin on each door for storage of beverage bottles or small items.



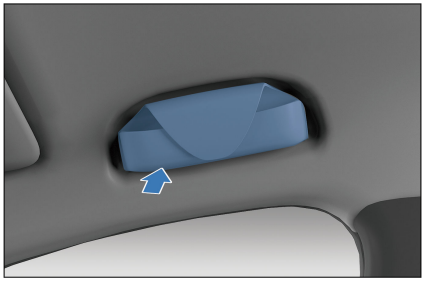
Centre console storage box

- Centre console features a storage box.



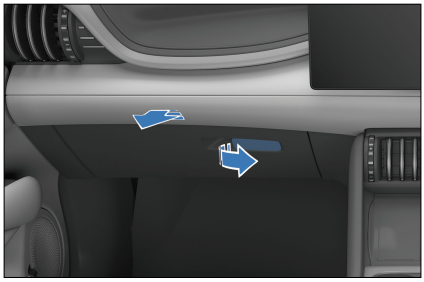
Glasses Case

- The magnetic glasses case is located above the driver's seat.



Glove Box

- Pull to open the glove box.
- Push the lid up to close it.



REMINDER

- To reduce risk of injury in the event of an accident or emergency braking, keep the glove box closed while driving.

Centre Console Cubby

- Pull up the centre console cubby to open it.
- Press down on the cover of centre console cubby to close it.

REMINDER

- To reduce risk of injury in the event of an accident or emergency

REMINDER

braking, keep the centre console cubby closed while driving.

Cup Holder

Front Seat Cup Holder

The front seat cup holder is located inside the centre console cubby.

CAUTION

- A cup may not fit into the cup holder due to its dimensions or shape.

WARNING

- When placing hot beverages, exercise caution to avoid burns. Avoid sudden acceleration or braking to prevent scalding from spilled liquids.
- Do not place an open cup or untightened beverage bottle in the cup holder, so as to avoid liquid spillage while you are driving, opening or closing a door.
- Do not place rigid containers or objects such as glass or ceramic cups in the cup holder. During an accident or sudden

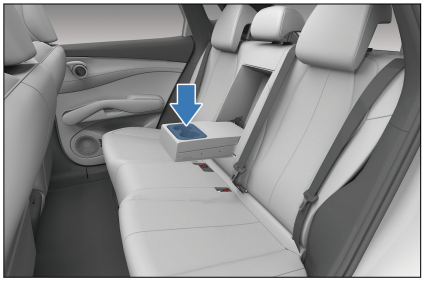
WARNING

braking, unsecured items may be ejected, potentially causing injury to occupants.

- To ensure safe driving, the driver is strictly prohibited from taking the cup out or placing it in the cup holder while driving.

Rear Seat Cup Holder

- Flip the rear seat armrest to use the cup holder.



CAUTION

- Do not start or brake the vehicle suddenly when the cup holders are being used to prevent spillage or scalding.
- Do not place an open cup or untightened beverage bottle in the cup holder, so as to avoid liquid spillage while you are driving, opening or closing a door.
- To ensure safe driving, the driver is strictly prohibited from taking the cup out or placing it in the cup holder while driving.

Seatback Pockets

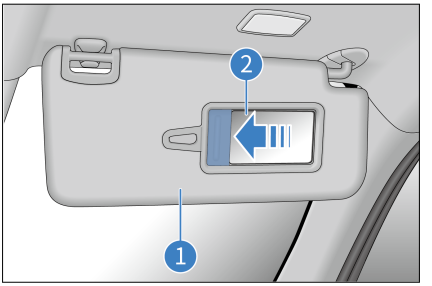
- There are seatback pockets at the back of the front seats for magazines, newspapers and phones.

Other Devices

Sun visor

① Sun visor

- To block sunlight from the front, pull the sun visor down.
- To block sunlight from a side, remove the swivel sleeve from the fixed support and turn the visor towards the side window.



② Vanity mirror

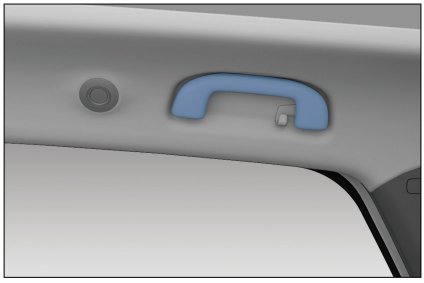
- Flip down the sun visor and slide the mirror cover for use.

REMINDER

- Correct use of the sun visor improves driving safety and comfort.

Grab Handles

- Pull the grab handle down for use. The handle returns to its original position when released.



CAUTION

- Do not hang any heavy objects from the grab handles.

USB Ports

Front-Row USB Ports

They are located at the hollowed-out part below the auxiliary dashboard.

① Type-C data transmission port.

② Type-C charge port.

The power outtlet can be used only when the ignition is on.

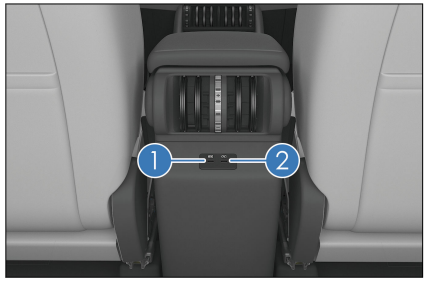
Rear-Row USB Ports

- The rear USB ports are located behind the centre console cubby.

  ①Type-C fast-charge port

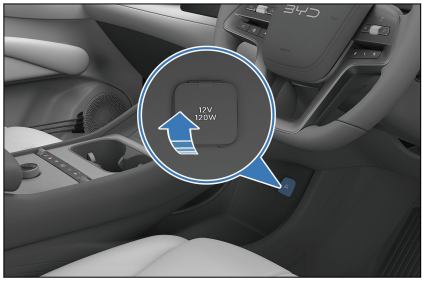
  ②Type-C charge Ports

- The power outlet can be used only when the ignition is on.



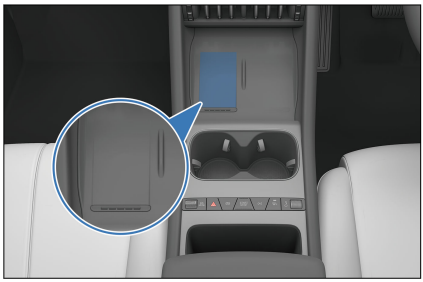
12V Auxiliary Power

- It is used for accessories with 12V DC working voltage and no more than 10A working current.
- The 12V auxiliary power is available only when the ignition has been switched on. Lift the cover to use it.



Wireless Phone Charger Location*

- The mobile phone wireless charging area is located on the centre console. To activate/deactivate wireless charging, tap the wireless charging icon on the shortcut page after sliding down the top status bar on the infotainment touchscreen.
- After starting the vehicle, put the phone at the wireless charger area with the phone screen facing up. The phone automatically begins wireless charging, and a charging icon is displayed on the infotainment screen.



- Wireless phone charging uses a coil to transmit electrical energy to a phone battery through electromagnetic wave induction so that the phone can be charged without a cable connection.

CAUTION

- To use the vehicle wireless charger, your phone must have wireless charging function.
- Ensure your smart key is more than 0.820 feets(25 cm) away from the wireless charger area when the wireless charger system is working.
- To avoid wireless charger dysfunction or even accidents, do not place coins, metal keys, metal rings, or other articles containing metal in the wireless charger area together with the phone.
- To avoid damage to the charger area, do not place heavy objects on it.
- If the phone wireless charger system is faulty and does not work properly, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.
- BYD will not assume any responsibility for any problems caused by improper use. If the product is disassembled or modified, the free warranty will be terminated.
- For safety reasons, do not leave an unattended phone being charged in the vehicle.
- For safety reasons, refrain from checking phone charging status while driving.
- If a metal item is found between the device and the charger during charging, remove the phone immediately, and do not remove the metal item until it has cooled to prevent burning.

CAUTION

- When charging, align the phone’ s base with the vent in the wireless charging surface to optimise thermal performance.
- Prevent any fluid from coming into contact with the charger area, or the wireless charger will malfunction.
- Avoid using flammable solvents (e.g., oil, grease, alcohol) to clean the wireless charging area.
- Avoid covering the inductive charging zone with towels, clothing, or other objects while charging.
- Charging may stop at high temperatures, and will resume once the temperature drops.
- BYD makes no commitments for problems caused by external wireless charging coils, such as magnetic docking charging coil. Please use with caution.
- To avoid burning cards with chips, such as bank cards and NFC cards, do not place them between the phone and the charging dock.
- When positioning an NFC-enabled device on the wireless charging pad before charging, the wallet card interface may appear.
- When the vehicle is powered on, wireless charging pauses during digital key activation and resumes automatically afterward.

REMINDER

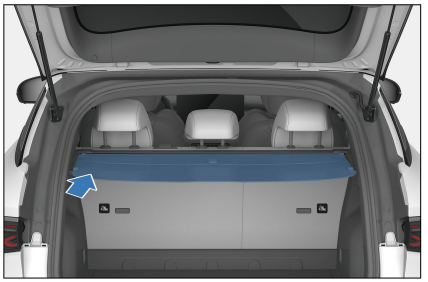
- Only one phone can be charged at a time.

REMINDER

- A phone case that is too thick may prevent charging.
- On bumpy roads, the wireless phone charger may intermittently stop and then resume.
- Try to ensure that the surface on which a mobile phone is placed is parallel to the charging module. If the phone moves from the wireless charger area and stops charging, move it back.
- If the phone cannot be charged properly, ensure that there are no foreign objects in the wireless charger area, or wait for the wireless charger area to cool down before trying again. If it is still impossible to charge the phone, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.
- After power-off, if the phone is still charging, the message "Please take your cell phone with you" is displayed.
- The setting icon for wireless phone charging can be added or removed on the shortcut page of the infotainment touchscreen.
- For the purpose of compatibility, the in-vehicle wireless fast charging* module may be slower than the original charger provided by your phone's manufacturer.
- The wireless fast charging* power of your phone depends on that supported by the phone, while the in-vehicle fast charging* only supports up to 50 W.
- Certain phones may carry outdated charging programs that are not capable of fast charging*.

Cargo Cover

- The cargo cover is used for privacy and direct sunlight protection.
- Snap the two grooved sides of the cargo cover into the lower C-pillar shield bosses on both sides, and then attach the cover drawstring.
- Do the reverse to remove the cover.



WARNING

- When installing the cargo cover, make sure that it is installed securely.
- Do not place any objects on the cargo cover.
- Never allow a child to climb onto the cargo cover, otherwise, damage to the cargo cover, or even injury/death to the child, can happen.

Hook

- The hook is located on the side of the centre console. Press to access the second-row cup holder.

WARNING

- The hooks are designed to support a maximum load of 3kg. Do not hang any heavy objects on the hook to avoid damage to the hook and occupants.

06 MAINTENANCE

Maintenance Information..... 206
Regular Maintenance.....208
Self-Maintenance.....213

Maintenance Information

Maintenance Cycle and Items

Maintenance Plan

- The maintenance plan is designed to ensure stable driving, failure reduction, safe and economical driving.
- The maintenance schedule lists all the maintenance items that are necessary to keep the vehicle in optimum condition at all times.
- Hoses with any degradation or damage should be replaced immediately. Rubber hoses (for systems such as A/C, heating, and braking systems) must be checked by professional technicians according to the maintenance schedule.

Maintenance Schedule Requirements

The vehicle must be maintained according to the regular maintenance schedule.

Maintenance Schedule

If the vehicle is operated primarily under one or more of the following special conditions, certain maintenance items may need to be performed more frequently.

- Road conditions
  - Muddy, sandy, or snowy roads.
  - Dusty roads
- Driving conditions
  - Use of towed trailer, camping trailer, or roof rack
  - Repeated short distances are driven within 5 miles (8 km), and the outside temperature is below zero.
  - Long idling and/or long distance driving at low speed, for example, using the vehicle as a police car, taxis or using it for transporting goods.

Vehicle maintenance is performed based on the mileages or months, whichever comes first.

Item	Interval
Brake friction block and disc	Check every 24 months or 20,000 miles.
Brake piping and hoses	Check every 24 months or 20,000 miles.
Steering wheel and tie rod	Check every 24 months or 20,000 miles.
Drive shaft boot	Check every 24 months or 20,000 miles.
Ball pin and boot	Check every 24 months or 20,000 miles.
Front and rear suspensions	Check every 24 months or 20,000 miles.

Item	Interval
Tyre condition and pressure, including TPMS	Check every 24 months or 20,000 miles.
Tyre wear (check front and rear wheel alignment when tyre uneven wear is greater than 2 mm, or 0.079 in.)	Check during maintenance and rotate when necessary. In severe driving conditions, check more frequently and rotate when necessary.
EPS corrosion and foreign materials on or ablation of connectors, including wiring harness GND point	Check every 24 months or 20,000 miles.
Coolant level in expansion tank	Check every 24 months or 20,000 miles.
Brake fluid	Check every 24 months or 20,000 miles.
Bumps or deformation of the high-voltage battery tray, crash bar, shield, and explosion-proof valve, and powertrain leaks	Check every 24 months or 20,000 miles.
A/C filter*	Check every 24 months or 20,000 miles and replace if necessary. In severe driving conditions, check every six months and replace if necessary.
Drive motor coolant	Replace the long-acting organic acid coolant every six years or 60,000 miles.
Brake fluid	Check during maintenance and replace every 24 months or 20,000 miles.
Gear oil in the transmission	Replace the gear oil and filter at 24 months or 20,000 miles for the first time, and every 24 months or 30,000 miles afterwards.
Note: When checking Item 1, replace chassis parts in a timely manner if any abnormal damage is found.	

CAUTION

- Brake friction pads and discs need to be checked more frequently in severe weather conditions, such as extremely cold regions like Norway, Finland, and Iceland.

REMINDER

- To keep the high-voltage battery in optimal condition, please fully charge and discharge the vehicle regularly, at least every 6 months or 44,739 miles (72,000 km), whichever comes first, for battery self-calibration. You can also contact a BYD authorised dealer

REMINDER

or service provider for capacity testing and calibration.

Severe driving conditions refer to:

- Frequent driving in dusty areas or frequent exposure to salt-laden air.
- Frequent driving on bumpy, puddled, or mountain roads.
- Driving in cold weather.
- Frequent and sudden braking.
- Frequent use of a towed trailer.
- Use as a taxi.
- Driving in congested urban areas at temperatures above 90°F (32°C) for more than 50% of total travel time.
- Driving at speeds over 75 mph (120 km/h) at temperatures 90°F (32°C) for more than 50% of total travel time.
- Frequent driving with maximum load.

Regular Maintenance

Regular Maintenance

- Be sure to maintain the vehicle as per the maintenance schedule to allow it serve in the best working efficiency and reduce fault occurrence.
- Drivers can refer to the maintenance plan for scheduled maintenance intervals, depending on the odometer reading or time interval, whichever comes first.
- For overdue maintenance items, the same time interval should be used for maintenance.
- It is recommended that maintenance be performed in accordance with the standards and specifications of BYD Auto Co., Ltd., and by a local BYD authorised dealer or service provider.
- The maintenance schedule lists the maintenance items and travel time or distance based on the assumption that the vehicle is used as a normal means of transportation to carry passengers and goods that do not exceed the vehicle load limit.

CAUTION

- Please maintain the vehicle regularly according to the requirements in the Warranty and Maintenance Service Manual of BYD.

Vehicle Servicing

- Pay attention to vehicle performance, sound changes, and visual evidence that indicates service is required. Under any of the following circumstances, it is recommended to send the vehicle to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection or repair as soon as possible:
  - Motor start produces unusual noises.
  - Coolant remains overheated, is stagnated or leaks.
  - Motor jams and produces unexpected noise.
  - The motor runs with excessive vibration.
  - The motor fails to get started.
  - Electric assembly leaks oil.
  - Electric assembly emits odors.
  - Power declines significantly.

- Water leaks from under the vehicle (A/C condensate is normal).
- Tire deflates; tires make excessive noises at turns; tire wear is uneven.
- Vehicle leads to one side when driving straight on a flat surface.
- Suspension unit movement leads to unusual noises.
- Loss of braking effect; sponge feeling on the brake pedal; pedal almost contacts the floor; vehicle leads to one side when braking.
- Motor coolant temperature remains high.
- Battery capacity decreases significantly.
- High battery temperature or overheat protection persists, or there is no power output.

WARNING

- Do not continue driving a vehicle that has not been inspected, as this may result in serious vehicle damage and personal injury.

Vehicle Corrosion Prevention

The most common causes of vehicle corrosion are:

- The underbody of the vehicle is covered in salt, dust or moisture.
- The vehicle or some of its parts are exposed to high humidity and high temperature for a long time.
- The paint layer or underlayer is scratched by minor collision or by stones and gravel.

The following rules should be observed to prevent vehicle corrosion:

- Wash the vehicle frequently.
  - If driving on saline roads in winter or living in coastal areas, wash the landing area of the vehicle at least once a month, and clean the chassis and hubcap with a high-pressure water jet or steam to reduce corrosion. Wash the chassis thoroughly after winter.
- Check vehicle paint and trims.
  - Any chip or crack found on the paint must be repaired immediately to prevent corrosion. If fragments or cracks peel off from the metal surface, it is recommended to go to a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for repair.
- Check interior vehicle.
  - Moisture and dust buildup under the carpet can cause corrosion. Check the undersides of carpets frequently to make sure these areas are dry.
  - Special care should be taken when the vehicle is transporting chemicals, detergents, fertilisers, salt, and other substances. Such substances should be kept in appropriate containers for transportation. If spillage or leakage is found, clean immediately and keep dry.
- Use fenders.
  - Fenders protect vehicles in saline areas or on gravel roads. The bigger and closer to the ground the fender, the better.
- Park in a well-ventilated and dry area.

Paint Maintenance Tips

- Clean the vehicle in time.
- Do not perform secondary painting if there is no obvious scratches on the

finish, so as to prevent mismatch or colour incompatibility.

- When the vehicle is not used for a long period, it should be parked in a garage or a well-ventilated place, and special body cover should be used in winter. Choose a shady place for parking temporarily.
- Prevent strong impacts, knocks, or scratches on the paint. If the paint is scratched, dented or if it peels, it should be repaired in time, preferably by professional auto beauty provider.
- Do not touch the paint with a greasy hand or cloth. Do not place greasy tools or rub with organic solvents on the vehicle body so as to avoid chemical reactions.
- The vehicle must be waxed once a month or whenever water resistance performance of the vehicle degrades and be taken to an auto beauty provider for maintenance once every three months.
- High quality polish and wax must be used. If body finish is severely weathered, use a car cleaning polish in addition to the wax. Carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions and precautions. Chrome finish should be polished and waxed as well as painted finish.

CAUTION

- When the vehicle is repainted and placed in a high-temperature paint waxing workshop, the vehicle's plastic bumper must be removed to avoid damage caused by high temperatures.

Exterior Cleaning

- The vehicle must be cleaned in time under the following circumstances, which can cause peeling of paint layer or corrosion of the vehicle body and parts:
  - Driving along the coast.
  - Driving on a road with anti-freeze.
  - Driving on roads covered with coal tar.
  - Resin, bird droppings, or insect carcasses are stuck on the vehicle.
  - Driving in areas with a large amount of smoke, soot, dust, iron filings, or chemicals.
  - The vehicle is visibly soiled by dust or mud.
  - After raining.

CAUTION

- Before washing the car, Please turn on the car wash mode and make sure that the four doors, two covers and port doors are closed.
- When washing the vehicle, do not open the charging port doors to clean its interior.
- Do not wash your car in hot and direct sunlight.

Manual Vehicle Washing

Wash the vehicle with water below 140°F (60°C).

- Hose off loose dirt, including all mud or road salts at the bottom of the vehicle and on wheel pits.
- Use a pH-neutral car cleaner according to its instructions. Soak a soft cloth with cleaning solution and gently wipe it down along the direction of the water flow. Do not wipe in a circular motion or horizontally.

- Rinse well—Dried washing agent forms markings. After washing the vehicle in hot weather, rinse all parts properly.
- Dry the vehicle with a clean soft towel to prevent stay water marks. In order to prevent scratching, do not rub or apply excessive force on the paint.

Pressure washing the vehicle

- Follow these instructions:
  - Keep the water jet nozzle at least 20 in. (50 cm) away from the vehicle surface.
  - The water pressure should ideally be below 60 bar and must not exceed 100 bar.
  - Use fan-shaped or mist spray setting rather than direct high-pressure stream of water.
  - Keep the pressure washer nozzle moving—avoid holding it in one spot.
  - Do not use a high-pressure water jet to clean the underside of the vehicle.
  - Do not clean the front compartment with a high-pressure water jet. Use low-pressure water and a mild cleaner instead.
  - Avoid prolonged rinsing of the windscreen to prevent water from entering the air intake, which can damage the A/C system.
  - Do not pressure wash lidars, cameras, or other sensors, as this may cause damage.
- Failure to follow these instructions may result in vehicle or component damage.
- Do not aim high pressure water directly at sealing strips, because excessive pressure may deform or damage the seals and cause water leakage into the vehicle interior.

CAUTION

- Do not use strong alkaline or acidic cleaners, as well as volatile substance (gasoline, kerosene, or solvent). These products may cause permanent and irreversible damage to the vehicle's paint and metal trim surfaces.
- When cleaning the lights, avoid using alcohol-based products (like alcohol and windscreen washer fluid), ketones (such as lacquer thinner and insect remover), or other chemical solvents (including gasoline, thinner, and carbon tetrachloride), as these can cause the light casings to crack.
- It is recommended that vehicles travelling in coastal or heavily polluted areas be washed once a day.
- Do not use blades or gasoline to remove hard dirt from the vehicle body. The plastic wheel trim is easily damaged by organic matter. If any organic matter splashes on the vehicle trims, wash it off with water and inspect for damage. Replace seriously damaged trims in a timely manner, as loose trims may fall from the wheel during driving and cause accidents.
- Do not use abrasive cleaning agents to scrub the bumper or lights.
- Clean polished metal parts with carbon cleaner and wax them regularly for protection.
- Be careful when cleaning the chassis to avoid cutting hands.

Automatic Vehicle Washing

When choosing an automated car wash service, be aware that certain types of brushes, unfiltered rinsing water, or machine-specific rinsing procedures may scratch the paint and affect its gloss and durability, especially darker colours. Before washing, consult the service provider or refer to equipment instructions to confirm which washing program is safest for your vehicle's paint.

CAUTION

- Make sure to disable the AVH function before entering an automatic car wash.
- Fold the side mirrors before washing, and unfold them before driving.

Interior Cleaning

REMINDER

- Prevent direct water splash onto the dashboard or floor when washing the vehicle, as these may cause electrical faults.
- Do not wash the vehicle's floor to prevent corrosion.
- The phone slot is prone to dirt accumulation and should be cleaned using soft rubber cleaning tools.

Carpet

- Vacuum the carpet regularly.
- Clean the carpet regularly by scrubbing in a circular motion with a sponge or soft brush soaked in the suitable foaming detergent.
- Do not add the foam detergent into water and keep the carpet as dry as possible.

Seat Belts

- The seat belts can be cleaned with neutral soapy water or lukewarm water.
- Scrub the seat belts with a sponge or soft cloth. Check the seat belts for excessive wear, tear, or cut marks.

CAUTION

- Do not clean the seat belt with colourant or bleach. These substances may decrease the seat belt's strength.
- Do not use any seat belt that is not dry.

Doors and Windows

- Doors and windows can be cleaned with any ordinary detergent.
- Check the door brakes regularly. If a door brake lever is found with visible dust accumulation, wipe it with a wet soft cloth.

CAUTION

- When cleaning the inside of the rear windows, take care not to scratch or damage electric heating wires or junctions.

A/C Control Panel, Car Speakers, Dashboard, Control Panel and Switches

- Clean the A/C control panel, car speakers, dashboard, control panel and switches with a wet soft cloth.
- Wipe dust off gently with a clean soft cloth soaked in lukewarm water.

CAUTION

- Do not use organic substances (for example, solvents, kerosene, alcohol, and gasoline) or acid or alkali solutions. These chemicals can cause discolouration, staining, or flaking.
- Please confirm that the detergent or polishing agent to be used does not contain the above substances.
- If a new liquid washing agent is used, do not splash it onto the interior surface of the vehicle, because it may contain the above substances. If there is any spillage, immediately clean it thoroughly.

Leather

- Leather trimmings can be cleaned with a neutral detergent for woolen.
- Use a soft cloth with a neutral detergent solution to wipe off the dust, and then use a clean, wet cloth to wipe the remaining detergent thoroughly.
- If leather gets wet, wipe it with a clean soft cloth and air dry it in a cool, ventilated place.
- For any questions about vehicle cleaning, please consult a local BYD authorised dealer or service provider.

CAUTION

- If dirt cannot be cleaned off using a neutral detergent, clean it with a detergent that does not contain organic solvents.
- Do not clean leather with any organic material such as volatile oil, alcohol, gasoline, acid or alkali, as these will cause discolouration.

CAUTION

- Do not clean leather with a nylon brush or synthetic fiber cloth, as these may scratch the fine patterns on the leather surface.
- Mold may grow on dirty leather trimmings. Special care must be taken to avoid oil stains and trimmings must always be kept clean.
- Prolonged exposure to sunlight will cause leather to harden or shrink, so the vehicle should be parked in a shady and cool place, especially in the summer.
- In hot weather, avoid placing vinyl or waxy items on the trimmings, as these may stick to leather in high temperatures.
- Improper cleaning of leather trimmings may cause discoloration or spots.

Self-Maintenance

Self-Maintenance

Self-Maintenance Precautions

- If maintenance is to be carried out by the owner, be sure to follow the correct steps specified in this section.
- Note that improper and incomplete maintenance will affect the use of the vehicle.
- This section only lists instructions on simple maintenance items that can be done by the owner. However, there are many items that must be done by qualified technicians with special tools.

- Special care must be taken in maintaining vehicles to prevent accidental injuries. Make sure to obey the followings:

CAUTION

- Beware of short circuits, as some circuits and vehicle components carry high current or voltage.
- If coolant overflows, wipe it with a dry cloth or tissue to prevent damage to components or vehicle paint.
- If brake fluid overflows, rinse it with water to prevent damage to components or vehicle paint.
- When replacing wiper blades, do not allow the wipers to scratch the glass surface.
- Before closing the bonnet, check whether any tool or wipe cloth is left in the engine compartment.
- When working inside or under the vehicle, always wear goggles to protect your eyes against flying or falling objects or splashing liquid.
- As brake fluid may damage the skin or eyes, be careful when filling it. If your skin or eyes are exposed to brake fluid, immediately flush with clean water. Seek medical attention immediately if discomfort persists.

Checks

The following items should be checked according to usage or specified mileage:

- Coolant level: Check the expansion tank coolant level at each charge.
- Windscreen washer fluid: Check the residual amount of washer liquid in the tank monthly. When washer liquid is frequently used, check the residual amount more frequently.
- Windscreen wiper - Check wiper conditions monthly. If the wiper does not work, check it for wear, cracking, or other damage.
- Brake fluid level - Check the level monthly.
- Brake pedal - Check whether the brake pedal is operating properly.
- EPB switch - Check whether the switch is functional.
- Low-voltage battery - Check battery conditions and check for terminal corrosion monthly.
- A/C system - Check the operation of A/C units weekly.
- Tyres - Check tyre pressure monthly. Check tread wear and whether there are foreign bodies embedded.
- Windscreen defrosters - Check the defroster vent monthly.
- Lights: Check the condition of headlights, position lights, tail lights, high mount brake light, turn signals, rear fog lights, brake lights and license plate light monthly.
- Doors - Check whether the boot lid and all other doors (including rear doors) can be opened freely and locked securely.
- Horn - Check whether the horn is functioning properly.

REMINDER

- Do not continue driving a vehicle that has not been inspected, as this may result in serious vehicle damage and personal injury.

Combination Lights

Front combination lights

- Front combination lights are aligned before vehicle delivery. If the vehicle carries heavy load frequently, front combination lights may need to be realigned. It is recommended to have the front combination lights aligned by a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.

Fogging of lights

- Combination lights, tail lights, and turn signals on the side mirrors may become foggy after heavy rain or cleaning. This is similar to condensation on the side window during rain. It does not mean any problem with your vehicle.
- The lights are a relatively enclosed and narrow space. The temperature is very high when they light up (the mask and reflector could be burned and deformed easily), so they need heat dissipation. There are heat dissipation holes on the lamp housing for convection. The greater the temperature difference is, the more active the convection is. During the convection, the moisture in the air inevitably enters a lamp. Factors such as exposure to sunlight, convection, and bulb heating can cause the moisture in the air to condense into fog or water beads easily on the lamp surface at low temperatures. This is called fogging of lights.

REMINDER

- If fog presents inside the combination lights and inside the turn signal on the side mirror, it may be due to high air humidity or significant temperature difference between the vehicle and its surroundings. In that case, turn on the combination lights or turn signal while driving. The fog will evapourate after a short period of driving.
- If there is a noticeable amount of water inside the lights, it is recommended to drive the vehicle to a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for maintenance.

Sunroof Maintenance

Ordinary Sunroof Maintenance*

1. Wipe off dust or sand on the sealing strips of the sunroof with a wet cloth to avoid scratching them, which may affect their sealing performance.
2. Wipe off dust or sand around the roof metal sheet with a wet cloth to prevent abrasion of sealing strips when the sunroof is closed, which may affect the sunroof sealing performance.
3. Frequently clean the rails, front sash and other parts to avoid the accumulation of dust, sand, and leaves, and prevent the drainage holes from being blocked by such debris, resulting in water leakage into the vehicle.
4. When washing the vehicle, do not aim high-pressure water jets directly at the sealing strips, to prevent high pressure from distorting even damaging the strips and water from leaking into the vehicle.
5. The sunroof freezes easily in winter. Forcibly opening the frozen sunroof will damage sealing strips or other parts. Instead, warm up the vehicle and turn on the A/C system to accelerate the melting of snow and ice on the sunroof. Try to open the

sunroof after the temperature inside reaches a certain level. Dry the residual moisture on the sunroof to prevent it from freezing.

6. Do not open the sunroof fully on extremely bumpy roads. Otherwise, the vibration between the sunroof and the rail may deform related parts and even damage the motor. And, do not open the sunroof when it rains or the vehicle is being washed.

Vehicle Storage

- If the vehicle needs to be parked for a long time (more than a month), the following preparations should be made. Proper preparation helps prevent degradation and ensure easy use of the vehicle. If possible, park the vehicle indoors.
- Charge the vehicle on time.
- Thoroughly clean and dry the body surface.
- Clean the interior of the vehicle to ensure that carpets and mats are completely dry.
- Release the parking brake and set the gearshift lever in parking gear.
- Open one window slightly (if the vehicle is stored indoors).
- Disconnect the negative terminal of the low-voltage battery.
- Pad the front wiper arm with a folded towel or cloth to keep it out of contact with the windscreen.
- To reduce adhesion, apply silicone lubricant to all door seals and body wax to the painted surface where the door seals meet.
- Cover the vehicle body with a breathable covering made of a "porous material", such as cotton. Non-porous materials, such as plastic sheeting, can build up moisture and damage the paint.
- If possible, start the vehicle regularly (preferably once every month). If the vehicle has been parked for a year or more, go to a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for comprehensive maintenance.

Bonnet

Opening the Bonnet

Open the bonnet

1. Do not open the bonnet when the wiper arms are pulled up, as this may damage the bonnet’ s Paint.
2. Pull the handle on the left under the dashboard twice in the direction of the arrow. The bonnet unlocks and opens slightly.

3. Raise the bonnet then it will automatically rise to the open state.

Close the bonnet

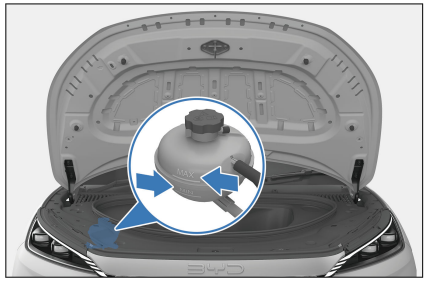
1. To close the bonnet, lower it to a proper height and push it slightly until it partially locks. Then press slowly and evenly with both hands to fully lock it. Keep your hands at a certain distance and do not press the ridges.
2. After closing the bonnet, check whether the latch is securely locked.

WARNING

- Do not press the front of the bonnet. Heavy pressure may damage the bonnet, causing dents in the surface or bending the edges.
- Do not force down the bonnet or release it from a high position.
- Do not close the bonnet with a single hand, as this may concentrate the force in one area and cause damage to the bonnet.
- If the bonnet is not closed properly, it may suddenly open during driving, blocking the view to the front, resulting in accidents and injuries.
  - After closing the bonnet, check whether the bonnet is level with the adjacent vehicle body, which means the bonnet is correctly close.
  - When closing the bonnet, confirm that nobody is within the range of the falling bonnet.
  - If the bonnet is not closed tightly when driving, stop immediately and close the bonnet to prevent accidents!

Cooling System

- It is required that the liquid level should be between the Maximum (MAX) and Minimum (MIN) marker lines of the expansion tank.
- The coolant must always be of the same specification as the original, without adding any mixture. Different brands and types of coolant should not be mixed.



- Refill coolant to the MAX line if the level is below the MIN line. Check the cooling system for leakage.

REMINDER

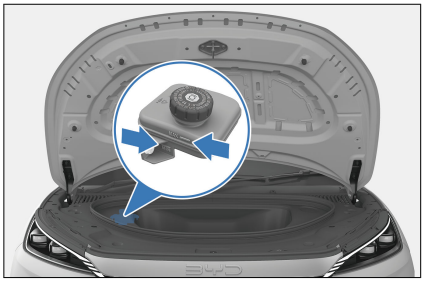
- Do not add any rust inhibitor or other additives to the cooling system, for they may be incompatible with the coolant or the motor components.
- Before opening the reservoir cap, make sure that the motor, high-voltage electronic control assembly, refrigerant reservoir and radiator are all cooled down. Opening the coolant expansion tank when the motor has not yet fully cooled down may cause coolant to squirt out, resulting in severe burns.

Braking System

- Check the level in the fluid tank monthly, and change the brake fluid according to the travel time and mileage specified in Maintenance Schedule.
- Be sure to use the brake fluid of the same specifications as the original brake fluid, and different types of brake fluid must not be mixed.
- It is required that the level in the fluid tank should be between "MAX"

(maximum level) and "MIN" (minimum level) marks.

- If the instrument cluster prompts low brake fluid warning, check for brake system leakage and brake lining wear.



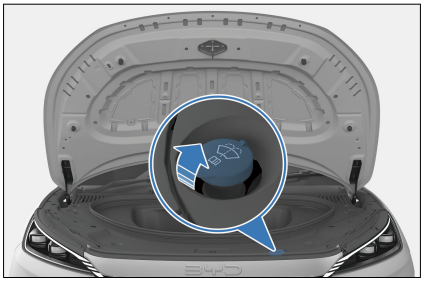
- Effects of high-altitude environments on brake fluid:
  - Atmospheric pressure decreases as altitude increases, which may increase the air content in the brake fluid and cause the brake warning light (!) to illuminate. Before driving in high-altitude areas, have the intelligent power braking system properly bled at a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.

CAUTION

- If the braking system is not bled before driving in high-altitude areas, the brake pedal may feel soft and braking distance may increase during driving. In severe cases, vehicle power may be limited. Drive with caution.

Washer

- During normal use, check the liquid level of the windscreen washer reservoir at least monthly.
- If the windscreen washer is used frequently, check the washer reservoir level regularly.
- Use high-quality windscreen washer fluid to improve cleaning performance and prevent freezing in cold weather.



- When refilling the washer fluid, use a clean cloth dipped in the windscreen washer fluid to clean the windscreen wiper blade. This helps keep the wiper blade in good condition.

CAUTION

- Do not inject vinegar-water solution or acid solution into the windscreen washer reservoir.
- The windscreen washer fluid used should preferably have a pH level between 6.5 to 10.

A/C System

- The A/C system is a closed system, and any important maintenance work should be performed by professionals from a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.
- The following practices help ensure that the A/C system works effectively.
  - Check the radiator and A/C condenser regularly.
  - Remove leaves, insects, and dust from the front surface of the A/C system. These deposits hinder the air flow and reduce the cooling effect.

- In cold months, turn the A/C on at least once a week for 10 minutes to circulate the lubricating oil in the refrigerant unit.

- If A/C cooling efficiency decreases, go to a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for maintenance.

CAUTION

- Whenever the A/C system is maintained, the maintenance station should use a refrigerant recycling system. The system can recycle the refrigerant to avoid environmental pollution caused by directly discharging it.

Wiper Blades

The blade strip, made of synthetic rubber, is a vulnerable part. Various service environment of the vehicle and usage habits of drivers can damage the blades. Therefore, please observe the following to ensure the service life of blades and driving safety:

- Do not use a blade to remove ice from the windscreen surface. Use a customised ice scraper.
- Do not scrape the windscreen surface if it is dirty, greasy or waxy.
- Keep the windscreen surface clean. Do not scrape dust, sand, insects, or foreign bodies on the windscreen surface.
- During vehicle washing and body paint maintenance, there is no need to wax the windscreen, as the wax layer reflects light in bad light, affecting the line of sight and driving safety. After washing the vehicle, rinse the blade with plain water, and use special windscreen wax cleaner to remove the wax layer on the windscreen.
- To prevent excessive water pressure from damaging the blades, do not wash the blades directly with a water jet.

Maintenance Rules

- Clean the windscreen and the blade regularly (preferably once a week or once every two weeks).
- Wipe the wiper regularly (preferably once a day or once every two days). When using a blade to wipe the windscreen, keep the windscreen fully wet (when there is no rain, the washer liquid must be sprayed in advance).
- Clean the windscreen with a special windscreen washer fluid.
- Promptly clean mud and insect carcasses stuck to the windscreen with a rag.
- When there are marks on the windscreen caused by gravel, maintenance should be carried out timely (it is recommended that windscreen repair resin products should be used and the windscreen should be replaced if marks are too large or too many.)
- Replace the wiper blades regularly, preferably once every six months.
- When cleaning the windscreen, raise the wiper arm in advance. The specific operation method is as follows:

  1. On infotainment touchscreen, go to Service → Overhaul to enable front/rear wiper check. The wipers rotate out.
  2. Grasp the upper end of the wiper arm and carefully lift the wiper arm and blade assembly.

Tyres

- For safe driving, tyres must be made and sized to fit the vehicle, with good tread and standard tyre pressure.

WARNING

- Using tyres with excessive wear or insufficient/excessive pressure can result in accidents, severe injury, or death.
- Please follow all instructions in this manual regarding tyre inflation and maintenance.

Tyre Inflation

- Keep tyres properly inflated to provide the best combination of maneuverability, tread life, and driving comfort.
- Under-inflated tyres can cause uneven tyre wear, affect maneuverability and energy consumption, and are prone to leakage due to overheating.
- Over-inflated tyres reduce riding comfort and are prone to damage from uneven roads. In severe cases, the risk of tyre bursting poses severe threats to the safety of the entire vehicle. Over-inflation will also cause uneven wear and tear of tyres, affecting tyre service life.
- When tyres are cold, you can decide whether to replenish tyre pressure according to the tyre pressure values displayed on the instrument cluster.
- Tyre pressure should be measured while tyres are at ambient temperatures. This means that it should be measured at least three hours after stopping the vehicle. If you must drive the vehicle before the tyre pressure is measured, tyres can still be considered at ambient temperatures as long as the travelled distance is not more than 0.9 mile (1.6 km).
- It is normal that tyre pressure reading measured while tyres are hot (after travel of several miles) is 0.3–0.4 bar (30–40 kPa) higher than when tyres are cold. In that case, do not deflate tyres in order to achieve the specified cold tyre pressure reading; otherwise, the tyre pressure will be insufficient.

REMINDER

- The recommended cold tyre pressure is indicated on the label affixed to the driver's door frame.
- Tubeless tyres have a self-sealing function when they are punctured. However, because in fact usually there is a very slow air leak, as soon as the tyre begins to depressurise, carefully look for the leak location.

Tyre Checks

- Whenever checking tyre inflation, check tyres for damage, foreign body piercing, and wear.
  - Replace the tyre if bumps, or tread or side damage are found. Tyres must be replaced if any of the cases happens.
  - Replace the tyre if there are cracks on its side, or if its fabric or cord can be seen.
  - Replace tyres with excessive tread wear.
- Tyre treads are cast with wear bars. When the tread is even with the wear bar, its thickness is less than 0.063 in (1.6 mm). The adhesion of tyres worn to this extent is very small on wet roads.

- Tyres with exposed wear bars are experiencing serious performance loss and therefore must be replaced.

Maintenance

- In addition to proper inflation, proper wheel alignment also helps reduce tread wear.
- If uneven tyre wear is found, go to a BYD authorised dealer or service provider and check the wheel alignment.
- Although the vehicle has been balanced in the factory, it needs to be re-balanced after running for a period of time.
- If there is some kind of continuous vibration at high vehicle speeds (above 50 mph, or 80 km/h), but not at low vehicle speeds, go to a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for tyre checks.
- If a tyre has been repaired, be sure to re-balance it.
- After installing a new tyre or replacing a new wheel, always perform tyre balancing.

CAUTION

- Improper wheel balancers can become loose and fall off, which damages the vehicle or surrounding objects during vehicle travel.
- Improper wheel balancers damage the aluminium rims of the vehicle. Therefore, it is recommended to use original wheel balancers.

Tyre Rotation

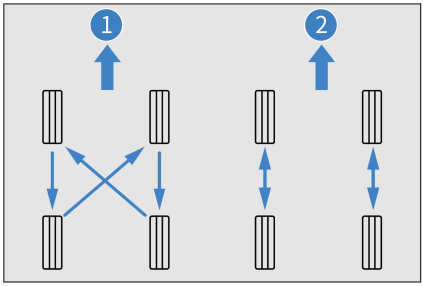
- In order to make tyres wear the same and prolong their service life, it is recommended to check the wear of the tyre inner and outer tread every 16,103 miles(10,000 km) and conduct four-wheel alignment, inspection and adjustment as well. Rotate the tyres if necessary.
- Do not rotate tyres when a spare tyre* is used for the vehicle.
- After tyre replacement, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for tyre pressure matching.

Directional tyres and wheels

- When purchasing replacement tyres, you may find that some tyres are "directional", which can only be rotated in one direction. If directional tyres are used, only the front and rear wheels can be swapped in tyre rotation.
- Tyre rotation for four-wheel drive vehicles is as shown:

① Non-directional tyres and wheels

② Directional tyres and wheels.



WARNING

- Only the left and right wheels can be rotated due to the narrow front and wide rear tyres on rear-wheel drive vehicles. If directional tyres are used on rear-wheel drive vehicles, tyre rotation is not accessible.

Replacing Tyres and Wheels

- Original tyres maximise performance, while providing the best combination of maneuverability, driving comfort and service life.
- It is recommended to replace with original tyres at a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.
- Replacement of tyres with different sizes, road ranges, rated speeds and maximum cold pressures (marked on the tyre side) or mixed use of radial tyres and diagonal tyres can reduce braking ability, driving force (ground adhesion) and steering accuracy.
- Unsuitable tyres affect the maneuverability and stability of the vehicle, and may lead to accidents.
- Do not replace only one tyre; otherwise it will severely affect the maneuverability of the vehicle.
- ABS works by comparing wheel speed. When replacing a tyre, use a tyre of the same size as the original tyre. The size and structure of the tyre affect wheel speed and may lead to uncoordinated system operation.
- If the wheel needs to be replaced, ensure that the specifications of the new wheel match those of the original wheel. New wheels are available for purchase at BYD authorised dealer or service providers. Please consult a BYD authorised dealer or service provider before replacing the wheels.

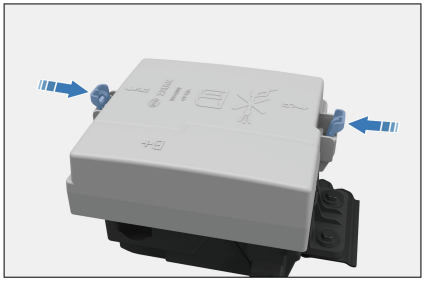
WARNING

- Please observe the following precautions to ensure proper vehicle maneuverability and control.
  - Do not mix radial tyres, bias belted tyres, or diagonal ply tyres on the vehicle.
  - Do not use tyres with dimensions other than those recommended by the manufacturer.

Fuses

All vehicle circuits are provided with fuses to prevent short circuit or overloading. These fuses are mounted in the under-bonnet and dashboard PDBs, respectively, which Fuse labels are included in these PDBs, showing the correspondence of fuses with electrical components.

- The fuses under the bonnet are located at the left rear part in the engine compartment. To open it, remove the trim first, and press the latch.



- The dashboard PDB under the driver's side is located on the right side of the dashboard and is accessible by taking apart the lower body of the dashboard.
- Replacement of blown fuses with ones of higher amperage can significantly increase the likelibonnet of damage to the electrical system.
- If there is no spare fuse of the same amperage, use a fuse with lower amperage instead.

REMINDER

- Do not use fuses with amperage higher than the rated ampere value or any other solution to replace the fuses, as this can cause serious damage or even a fire.
- If a fuse blows, it is recommended to check or replace the fuse at a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.

07 WHEN FAULTS OCCUR

When Faults Occur.....226

When Faults Occur

Reflective Vest

- The reflective vest is stored in the tool box under the boot cover flap.
- In case of emergency, always wear the reflective vest properly before you check for faults or handle accidents to ensure your safety.

If Smart Key Battery Is Exhausted

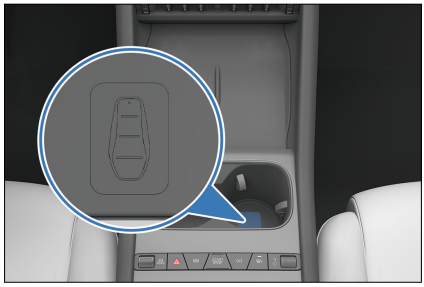
If the smart key indicator does not flash and the vehicle cannot be started using the start function, the smart key battery may be exhausted. It is recommended to contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for battery change as soon as possible. In this case, you may start the vehicle in no power mode.

CAUTION

- Do not place the key in areas at high temperatures.
- Do not hit or slam the key with hard objects.
- Magnetic fields generated by nearby radio stations, substations or airport radio transmitters may interfere with the normal operation of electronic smart keys.
- After locking the vehicle and arming its anti-theft alarm system, keep the key away from the vehicle if you do not use the vehicle; otherwise the automatic card finding of the vehicle will consume the power of the low-voltage battery and the smart key.

Starting the vehicle when the electronic smart key runs out of battery:

1. Unlock with the mechanical key.
2. Put the smart key close to the no-power sign.
3. Press the START/STOP button and the brake pedal to start the vehicle.



Emergency Shutdown System

- The emergency shutdown system is activated and the high-voltage system is automatically shut down when the following conditions are met:
  - The airbags do not deploy after a frontal collision.
  - There is a rear collision.
  - The vehicle system is faulty.
- The OK indicator goes off if any of the above situations occurs.
- Activating the emergency shutdown system in the noted types of collision minimises the risk of injuries or accidents.
- The vehicle system cannot be switched into the OK status once the emergency shutdown system is activated. In that case, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for help. The system is turned

off immediately even if the ignition is switched on. Contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider as soon as possible.

Vehicle Fire Rescue

In case of fire, continue to operate the vehicle as follows according to the actual situation:

1. Switch the ignition off, and leave the vehicle.
2. On the precondition that personal safety is ensured, if the fire is small and slow, use a dry powder fire extinguisher to put it out fire, and call for help immediately.
3. If the fire is large and growing quickly, stay away from the vehicle and call the fire brigade, informing them that the vehicle is equipped with a high-voltage battery pack, and wait for rescue.

CAUTION

- Wear insulated gloves during vehicle disassembly. Use fire extinguishers of designated type. Water or incorrect fire extinguishers may cause electric shock.
- In the event of other special conditions that cause flying projectiles (such as interior trims and glass), stay away from the vehicle and promptly ask a BYD authorised dealer or service provider to come to the site for handling.

Battery Leakage Rescue

After a collision, if there is battery leakage, an acrid smell inside the vehicle, visible acid flow outside the vehicle, or any smoke with the battery pack:

1. Switch the ignition off, and disconnect the low-voltage battery if conditions permit.
2. Call a BYD authorised dealer or service provider and the fire brigade, informing them that the vehicle is equipped with a high-voltage battery pack, and wait for rescue.

If a Collision Occurs

In case of collision, operate the vehicle as follows according to the actual situation:

1. Switch the ignition off, and disconnect the low-voltage battery if conditions permit.
2. Call immediately a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for rescue.
3. Carry out a simple inspection, if conditions permit: Check whether any edge of the high-voltage battery tray is cracked and whether any obvious liquid flows out.
   - Damage to high-voltage components is not identifiable in all cases. Do not handle damaged components or touch them with jewelry or other metal objects.
   - If skin comes in contact with leaked fluid, wash it immediately with plenty of water for 10-15 minutes. If there is still any discomfort, apply 2.5% calcium gluconate ointment, or soak in 2% to 2.5% calcium gluconate solution for 10-15 minutes. If the condition does not get better or discomfort persists, seek medical help immediately.
   - Do not touch the orange high-voltage cables or other high-voltage components. Only authorised repair personnel is allowed to work on high-voltage systems.

- Do not damage, modify, disassemble, or disconnect the orange high-voltage cables from the high-voltage grid.
- Inform the firemen and rescue personnel that the vehicle is equipped with a high-voltage battery pack.

WARNING

- Do not touch any spilled liquid, and stay away from a leaking vehicle or high-voltage battery.
- Do not dispose of the leaked fluid into the water or soil or other environment.
- In case of vehicle breakdown or collision, the high-voltage system generates a lot of heat before and after vehicle start-up and when the vehicle is powered off. Watch out for high pressures and high temperatures.
- Do not disassemble, move, or alter high-voltage battery components and connecting cables as their connectors can cause serious burns or electric shock and may result in personal injury or death. The orange cables are part of high-voltage wiring harness. Users must not repair the vehicle's high-voltage system by themselves. If any repair is required, it is recommended to go to a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for repair.
- The remote control key and high-voltage components of the vehicle may affect and harm people carrying medical devices.

If the Vehicle Needs Towing

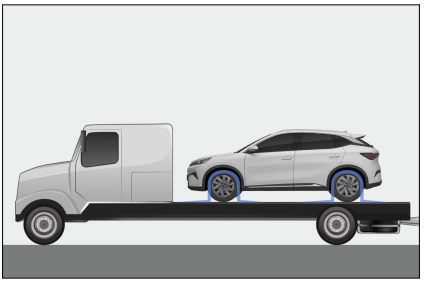
If the vehicle needs towing, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider, a professional towing service, or the organisation you joined for roadside assistance.

WARNING

- The vehicle must not be towed by other vehicles using only ropes or chains.

Recommended towing method:

- Flatbed device
  - If the vehicle fails and needs towing, a flatbed is recommended. When moving a vehicle on a flat trailer, keep all wheels off the ground.Towing the vehicle on front or rear wheels alone may damage high-voltage components.



CAUTION

- When moving a vehicle on a flat trailer, make sure that the vehicle being moved is properly secured to prevent it from sliding back.
- It is recommended to use professional tie-down straps and tensioners, and employ the over-

CAUTION

the-wheel method to secure the vehicle.

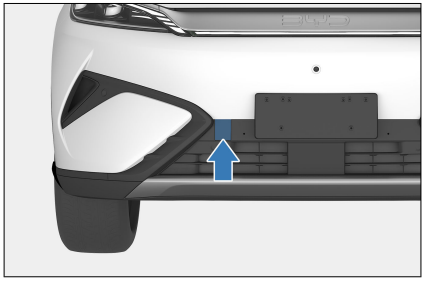
- When fixing the vehicle, avoid routing tie-down straps, ropes, or other securing devices through the wheels or attaching them to the chassis, suspension, or any other part of the vehicle body to prevent damage.
- Ensure the vehicle's wheels are immobilised during transport to prevent potential damage.

Tow Eye

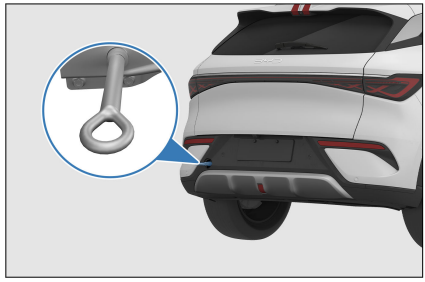
The vehicle is equipped with front and rear tow eye as standard.The installation method is as follows:

1. Pry the tow eye cover open with a flathead screwdriver.
2. Install the tow eye in the tow eye opening.

- The installation position of front tow eye is shown in the illustration.



- The rear mounting point is shown in the illustration.



- If the vehicle needs rescue, it is recommended to call a professional rescue or the customer service number.
- In emergency rescue situations where the vehicle needs to be towed, observe the following to avoid vehicle damage or personal injuries:
  - The towing vehicle must be in good conditions and the towed vehicle in Neutral gear. The towing speed must be no more than 3 mph (5 km/h).
  - Never use jerking actions to pull the vehicle.
  - The rear towing device cannot be used to tow other vehicles.
  - The towed vehicle must not carry any person except for the driver or tow any trailer.
  - Both towing and towed vehicles must have their hazard warning lights on.
  - To avoid damages to the vehicle, only the in-vehicle tow eye can be used.
  - The distance between the towing and towed vehicles must be more than four meters but less than ten meters.
  - The width and weight of the towed vehicle must not be greater than those of the towing vehicle.
  - When towing the vehicle, ensure its surroundings are unobstructed and have enough space and no person is close to the towing device.

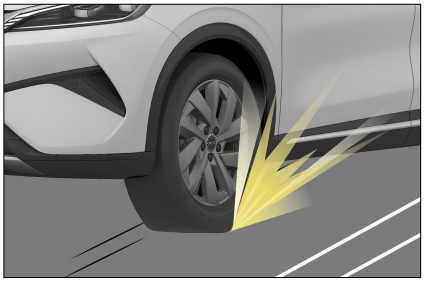
- When freeing the vehicle, control to make it travel in the direction of tow force. Dragging the vehicle from the side or vertically is prohibited.
- The towed vehicle must be controlled by a driver inside the cabin, with the steering and braking systems in normal conditions.

WARNING

- Never rescue a stuck or high-centreed vehicle with tow eyes. Call a professional rescue or the customer service number.
- If the steering or braking system of the towed vehicle fails, contact a professional rescue or the customer service number. Do not tow the vehicle in such cases.
- Towing the vehicle with a tow eye is not recommended.

If a Tyre Goes Flat

- In case of a flat tyre, slow down, keep straight, and drive off the busy road to a safe place.
- Park on solid, flat ground and avoid motorway forks.
- Engage the EPB and press the "P" button.
- Power off the vehicle and turn on the hazard warning light.



- Be sure to have all passengers get off the vehicle and ask them to go to a safe place away from crowded traffic.
- To prevent slipping, secure the vehicle by wedging the tyre diagonally against the flat tyre.

CAUTION

- Do not continue driving with a flat tyre. Even a short distance of driving with flat tyre can cause irreparable damage.

In-Vehicle Tools

In-vehicle tools are stored in a tool box under the boot cover flap.

These include: warning triangle, reflective vest, lug nut cap removal clamp, tyre repair kit, and tow eye.

REMINDER

- In an emergency where you need to service the vehicle yourself, you must know how to use these in-vehicle tools and their locations.

- In case of emergency, always wear the reflective vest properly before you check for faults or handle accidents to ensure your safety.

Placing the warning triangle

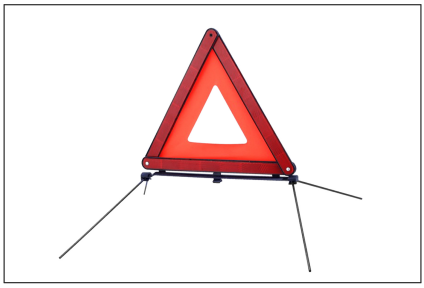
REMINDER

- The warning triangle is used to warn vehicles coming from behind and to avoid collisions due to high speed or late braking.

How to use the warning triangle:

1. Take the warning triangle out of its box.
2. Attach the ends to form a triangle.

3. Mount the supports as shown.



REMINDER

- When parking for repair, remember to place a triangular warning sign behind the vehicle following the local traffic regulations with red triangle side facing oncoming vehicles. After the repair, put the warning triangle back for future use.

Using Tyre Repair Kit

- The tyre sealant is used to seal small cuts, especially tread cuts or punctures. It is just an emergency solution for you to drive to the nearest service centre, and only for short emergency stretches, even if the tyre is not deflated.

WARNING

- At most, the tyre repair kit can repair holes that are on the tyre tread and are within 0.24 in.(6 mm) in diameter. Do not use the kit on holes with larger diameters or in other tyre positions, but call for roadside assistance instead.
- Tyre sealant is highly flammable and harmful to health. Take necessary precautions to prevent fire and avoid contact with skin, eyes, and clothing; keep away from children; and do not inhale its vapour.

In case of contact with tyre sealant:

- If tyre sealant comes into contact with the skin or gets into the eyes, thoroughly flush the affected body part immediately with plenty of clean water.
- Change contaminated clothing immediately.
- In case of an allergic reaction, seek medical attention immediately.
- If tyre sealant is ingested by accident, rinse mouth thoroughly and drink plenty of water immediately. Do not induce vomiting, and seek medical attention immediately.

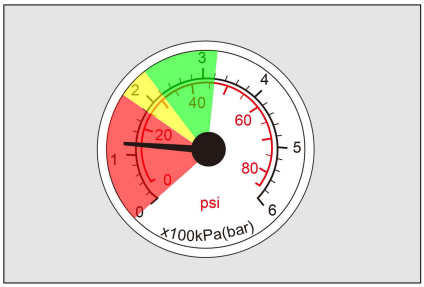
Using the tyre repair kit

- See labels on the inflator and tyre sealant for usage of the kit.
- If the inflator needs to be connected to a power source, plug the inflator into the vehicle's 12V socket, start the vehicle, and turn on the inflator. The tyre sealant is then filled through the inflator hose into the tyre along with air.

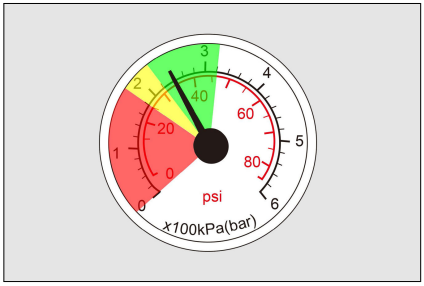
REMINDER

- Make sure the inflator switch is off when you plugging the power supply into the 12V socket in the vehicle.
- Do not use the inflator continuously for more than 10 minutes at a time.

- Observe the tyre pressure reading on the inflator.
  - If the tyre pressure does not reach 180 kPa (1.8bar) within 10 minutes (red area shown in the figure), turn off the inflator. You are recommended to contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.



- If the tyre pressure reaches between 1.8 and 3.2 bar (180-320 kPa) (green and yellow areas shown in the illustration), remove the kit as soon as possible and drive at a speed below 50 mph(80 km/h) within one minute, with the furthest driving distance not exceeding 10 km, so that the tyre sealant is evenly distributed within the tyre.



- Stop to check the repaired tyre and the tyre pressure reading on the inflator.
  - If the tyre pressure is greater than 2.2 bar (220 kPa), drive to the nearest service centre at a speed below 50 mph(80 km/h).
  - If the tyre pressure is between 130 and 220 kPa (1.3~2.2 bar), repeat the process to fill the tyre sealant into the tyre and observe the tyre pressure gauge reading on the inflator.
  - If the tyre pressure does not reach 130 kPa (1.3 bar), it is recommended to contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.

REMINDER

- Using tyre sealant on damaged tyres is only an emergency solution. Please change the tyres at a professional repair centre as soon as possible. It is recommended that you contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider and inform the maintenance technician that tyre sealant has been used.
- Avoid hard acceleration and high-speed turns.
- Abide by the maximum vehicle speed limit of 50 mph (80 km/h). Do not continue driving if any strong vibration, driving instability, or noise occurs while the vehicle is running.
- When the tyre sealant is about to expire (see the label on the canister for exact date), replace it with a new one.
- After using the tyre repair kit, it is recommended to purchase new tyre sealant at a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.

08 SPECIFICATIONS

Vehicle Data..... 234
Information..... 239
Declarations of Conformity..... 242

Vehicle Data

Vehicle Data

Vehicle Data

Dimensions

Item	Parameter	
Trim level	Configuration 1	Configuration 2
Vehicle Length	175 in (4455 mm)	
Width (excluding side mirrors)	74 in (1875 mm)	
Vehicle height	64 in (1615 mm)	
Wheelbase	107 in (2720 mm)	
Front track	62.2 in (1580 mm)	61.54 in (1563 mm)
Rear track	62.4 in (1585 mm)	61.46 in (1561 mm)
Front suspension	35 in (888 mm)	34.13 in (867 mm)
Rear suspension	33 in (847 mm)	34.09 in (866 mm)
Approach angle	19°	
Departure angle	24°	

Vehicle mass

Item	Parameter	
Trim level	Configuration 1	Configuration 2

Item	Parameter	
Kerb weight	4145 lb (1880 kg)	4387 lb (1990 kg)
Front axle load	1951 lb (885 kg)	2172 lb (985 kg)
Rear axle load	2194 lb (995 kg)	2216 lb (1005 kg)
Max. allowable total mass	5313 lb (2410 kg)	5556 lb (2520 kg)
Front axle load at maximum allowable total mass	2282 lb (1035 kg)	2524 lb (1145 kg)
Rear axle load at maximum allowable total mass	3031 lb (1375 kg)	3031 lb (1375 kg)
Number of occupants	5 persons	5 persons

Drive motor

Vehicle power performance and economic efficiency

Item	Parameter	
Trim level	Configuration 1	Configuration 2
Maximum design speed	112 mph (180 km/h)	124 mph (200 km/h)
Maximum gradeability	30%	45%
Power consumption per 100km under comprehensive working conditions	16.7 kW · h/100 km (62 miles)	18.4 kW · h/100 km (62 miles)

CAUTION

- Actual power consumption depends on factors such

CAUTION

as vehicle conditions, road conditions and driving habits.

High-voltage battery

Item	Parameter
Type	Lithium iron phosphate battery
High-voltage battery rated capacity	150Ah

Wheels and tyres

Item	Parameter
Tyre specification	235/50 R18; 215/55 R18
Tyre pressure (kPa)	39 psi
	270 KPa
Wheel dynamic balance requirement	⩽0.022 lb
	⩽10 g

Wheel alignment values (at kerb weight)

Item	Parameter
Front camber	-0.55°±0.75°
Total front wheel toe-in	0.36°±0.16°
Kingpin inclination angle	11.61°±0.75°
Kingpin caster angle	6.47°±0.75°
Rear camber	-1°±0.75°
Total rear wheel toe-in	0.16°±0.16°

Braking system

Item	Parameter	
Trim level	Configuration 1	Configuration 2
Free stroke of brake pedal	⩽0.197 in	
	⩽0.197 in.(5 mm)	

Item	Parameter	
Front brake disc standard thickness	1.02 in	1.10 in
	26 mm	28 mm
Front brake disc minimum thickness	0.945 in	1.02 in
	24 mm	26 mm
Rear brake disc standard thickness	0.787 in	
	20 mm	
Rear brake disc minimum thickness	0.709 in	
	18 mm	
Front friction plate standard thickness	0.394 in	
	10 mm	
Front friction plate minimum thickness	0.098 in	
	2.5 mm	
Rear friction plate standard thickness	0.335 in	
	8.5 mm	
Rear friction plate minimum thickness	0.098 in	
	2.5 mm	

Seats (when measuring cushion depth):

Item	Parameter
Seatback angle set for front seats	23°
Forward and backward moving spaces for front seats	7.87 in.(200mm) forward and 2.36 in. (60mm) backward from designed position; slide rail inclination: 4.5°
Normal service conditions of front seatbacks	Seatback 22.5° forward and 52.5° backward from the designed position
Seatback angle set for rear seats	23°/28°
Forward and backward moving spaces for rear seats	Design condition, not adjustable (lay down when unlocked)
Normal service conditions of rear seatbacks	27°

Recommended oil type and amount:

Item	Parameter	
Trim level	Configuration 1	Configuration 2
Front drive gear transmission oil type	EV3.0; BOT383; W5	EV3.0; BOT383; W5
Front drive gear transmission oil amount	Front: 63.35±1.76 imp oz (1.8±0.05 L) Rear: 52.79±1.76 imp oz (1.55±0.05 L)	52.79±1.76 imp oz (1.55±0.05 L)
Motor coolant type	Glycol organic acid coolant -40	
Motor coolant amount	1.22±0.11 ukgal/1.28±0.11 ukgal(4WD)	1.18±0.11 ukgal/1.24±0.11 ukgal(RWD)
	5.59±0.5 L/5.84±0.5 L(4WD)	5.38±0.5 L/5.63±0.5 L(RWD)
Brake fluid type	DOT4 or HZY6	
Brake fluid amount	0.216±0.011 ukgal 980±50 mL	

CAUTION

- The recommended oil types have been tested and approved by BYD. Using other oil types may compromise vehicle performance, and could cause malfunctions or damage to components.

Vehicle Identification

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)

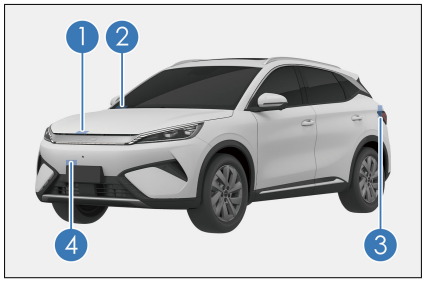
VIN attaching positions:

① Attached the label to the designated area to the hood latch on the inner panel.

② On the corner of the windshield pillar dashboard

③ Attached the label to the designated area on the front side of the transmission housing.

④ Attached the label to the designated area on the front face of the front bumper beam.

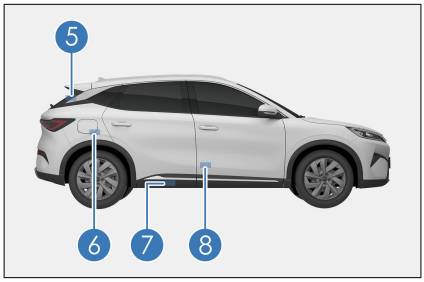


⑤ Attached the label to the designated area on lower section of the rear door inner panel.

⑥ Attached the label to the designated smooth surface on the rear wheel housing.

⑦ Attached to the inner side of the rear door threshold

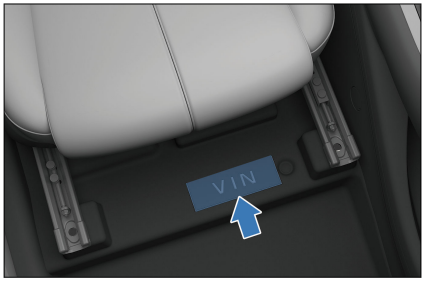
⑧ Attached to the driver's door inner panel



VIN engraving position:

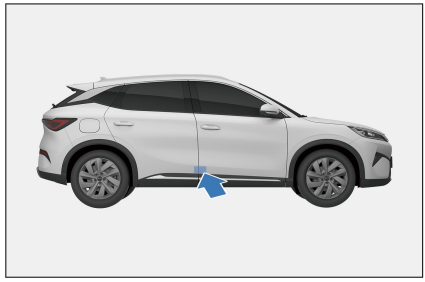
VIN is engraved on the lower beam of the front passenger seat.

After connecting the VDS, VIN can also be found in the upper right corner of the screen for the corresponding model. For details, please refer to the VDS operation manual.



Vehicle Nameplate

The vehicle nameplate is located under the right B-pillar.



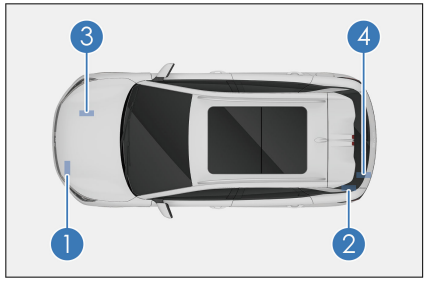
Model and Serial Number of Drive Motor

① The model and serial number of the front drive motor* are attached above the inner panel of the bonnet.

② The model and serial number of rear drive motor are attached on the left part of the sheet metal surface on the boot lid.

③ The model and serial number of front drive motor* are engraved on the front drive motor housing.

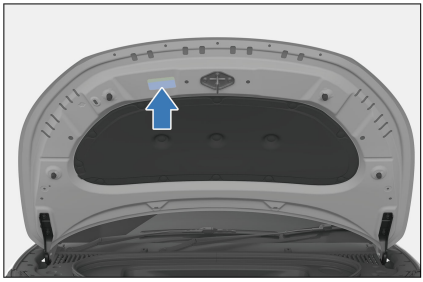
④ The model and serial number of rear drive motor are engraved on the rear drive motor housing.



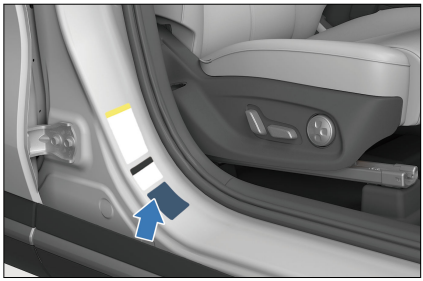
Information

Warning Labels

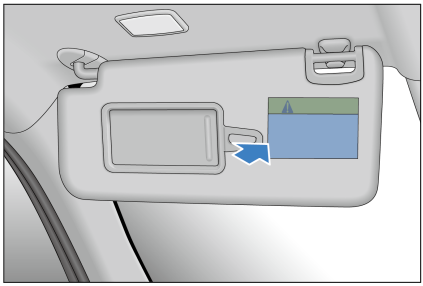
A/C system and cooling fan sticker



Side airbag warning labels are attached below the lock rings on the left and right front doors.



The airbag warning label is printed on the front passenger's sun visor.



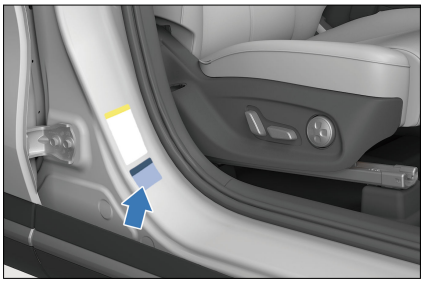
WARNING

- Never use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an active airbag in front of it.

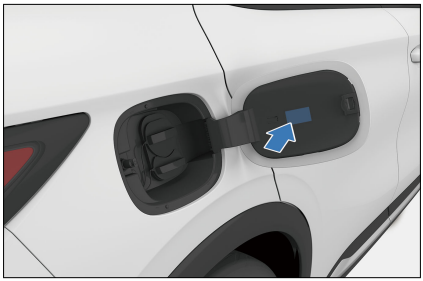
WARNING

- Death or serious injury to the child can occur.

The tyre pressure label is attached below the right B-pillar lock ring.



The charging connector use tip label is attached to the inner surface of the charge port door.



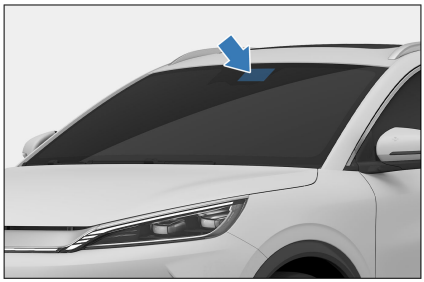
Warning Lables on Support Mechanisms

Support mechanisms on this vehicle can be dangerous. Do not disassemble or service them yourself. Lables on these products are defined as follows:

Lable	Definition
	WARNING
	Pressurised cylinder
	Refer to owner's manual
	No open flame
	Not to be serviced by users
	Recycle separately (Note: Contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.)
	No shaking or cranking
	No stepping on

Transponder Mounting Position

The transponder mounting position is located in the upper left of the front windscreen.



CAUTION

- Do not overlap the sticker transponder with the glass frame or other objects.

Declarations of Conformity

Declarations of Conformity

Radio Frequency Statement

CE	The vehicle has different types of radio equipment. The manufacturers of the radio equipment declare that the RF Modules are in compliance with Directive 2014/53/EU. The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available at the following Internet address: https://cn-prod.byd.com/eu/eu-doc.

Name of Components and Parts	Frequency	Maximum discharging power
Tyre pressure monitoring module	314.9 MHz ± 25 KHz	86 dBμV/m ± 3 dB
	315 MHz ± 45 KHz	-58~-52 dBm (3.3 yd or 3 meters radius)
	433.92 MHz ± 44 KHz	87 dBμV/m ± 2 dB
	433.92 MHz ± 40 KHz	-58~-52 dBm (3.3 yd or 3 meters radius)
Interior detection antenna	125 KHz ± 3 KHz	10W
Electronic Smart Key	433.92 MHz ± 60 KHz	10 dbm
High-frequency module	433.92 MHz	0.48 W
Wireless charger module	127.7 KHz ± 30 KHz	50 W (one side)
ECALL GPS antenna	1575.42 MHz ± 1.023 MHz 1561.098 MHz ± 2.046 MHz	0.066 W
ECALL 4G antenna	700–960 MHz 1710–2690 MHz	/
Bluetooth host	2400–2483.5MHz	20 dBm
Four-in-one network communication antenna (4G)	700–960 MHz 1710–2690 MHz	/

Network communication host (4G)	850–1900MHz	23 dBm
FM radio antenna amplifier	76–108 MHz	1.2 W
FM radio broadcasting host	87–108 MHz	/
AM antenna amplifier	520–1710 KHz	1.2 W
AM host	520–1620 KHz	0.5 W
DAB antenna amplifier	170.928–239.2MHz	0.5 W
DAB host	170–240MHz	/
Four-in-one antenna (GPS, 4G, WiFi/BT)	1575.42 MHz ± 1.023 MHz; 1561.098 MHz ± 2.046MHz (GPS) 700–960 MHz; 1710–2690MHz (4G)	0.066 W
Exterior NFC device	13.56 MHz	1W
Interior NFC device	13.56 MHz	1.5 W
Front mmWave radars	76.0 GHz–77.0 GHz	/
Rear mmWave radars	76.0 GHz–77.0 GHz	/

Smart Key Statement

	Uzbekistan Model: D1-92
	EU countries Model: D1-92
ANATEL 13120-22-14807	Brazil Model: D1-92 This equipment is not entitled to protection against harmful interference and may not cause interference to duly authorised systems.
FCC ID: 2A5DHD1-315	The United States Model: D1-315

R 214-118832	Japan Model: D1-315

MmWave Radars Statement

CE	EU countries Certificate ID: T.2021.08.0001
R 214-118832	Japan Certificate ID: 219-210015
ANATEL 13120-22-14807	Brazil Certificate ID: 15210-21-03745 This equipment is not entitled to protection against harmful interference and may not cause interference to duly authorised systems.

Numerics

12V Auxiliary Power..... 201

A

A/C System Maintenance..... 218
Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System (AVAS)..... 171
Adjusting Side Mirrors..... 69
Adjusting the Rearview Mirror Manually..... 68
AFL adaptive front light..... 72
Airbag Overview..... 15
Anti-theft Alarm System..... 27
Automatic Anti-glare Interior Rearview Mirror*..... 69
Automatic EPB Release upon Vehicle Start..... 115
Automatic Vehicle Hold (AVH)..... 117
Automatic Vehicle Washing..... 212

B

Battery Leakage Rescue..... 227
Battery Properties..... 98
Battery Usage Tips..... 99
Blind spot detection (BSD)..... 155
Bluetooth Call..... 185
Brake Fluid..... 217
Break-in Period..... 102
BYD App..... 197

C

Cargo Cover..... 204
Carpet..... 212
Carrying Luggage..... 106
Centre Console Cubby..... 199
Centre console storage box..... 198
Charge Port Anti-theft Lock*..... 96
Charging Mode..... 85
Charging Precautions..... 83
Charging Safety Warnings..... 82
Check Before Charging..... 86
Child Presence Detection (CPD)*. 173
Child Protection Lock..... 58
Child Restraint Systems..... 21
Coolant..... 217

D

Data Collection and Processing..... 28
Declarations of Conformity..... 242
Discharging Instructions..... 94
Disclosure of Personal Data to Authorities..... 30
Door Bins..... 198
Driver Monitoring Assistance*..... 171
Driving Precautions..... 118
Driving Range Display Mode Settings*..... 97
Driving Safety Precautions..... 104
Driving Safety Systems..... 175

E

Electronic Smart Key..... 46
Emergency Braking When Brake Pedal Fails..... 115
Emergency Shutdown System..... 226
Emergency Vehicle Locking with Mechanical Key..... 56
Energy Regeneration Intensity Settings..... 97
Engaging EPB Automatically..... 114
Engaging EPB Manually..... 114
EPB Operating Sound..... 116
EPB Switch..... 114
EPB Trailer Mode*..... 115
External Discharging..... 95

F

Fire Prevention..... 108
Front A/C Panel..... 192
Front Interior Lights..... 79
Front Passenger Airbag Switch..... 76

Front Seat Cup Holder..... 199
Front vents..... 196
Front Windscreen Wipers and Washer 66
Function Definition..... 193
Fuses..... 222

G

Gear Shift Controls..... 113
General Charging Troubleshooting 85
Gestures and Responses..... 185
Glasses Case..... 198
Glove Box..... 199
Grab Handles..... 201

H

Hazard Warning Light Switch..... 75
Head-up Display (HUD)*..... 168
High-Voltage Battery..... 98
Hook..... 204

I

If a Tyre Goes Flat..... 230
If Smart Key Battery Is Exhausted 226
If the Vehicle Needs Towing..... 228
Indicators and Warning Lights..... 35
Infotainment Touchscreen..... 182
Installing Child Restraint Systems. 23
Intelligent Charging..... 93
Intelligent Speed Limit Control (ISLC) 136
Intelligent Voice Assistant-BYD Assistant..... 184
Interior Cleaning..... 212

L

Light Switches..... 70
Locking/Unlocking with Mechanical Key..... 50
Low-Voltage Battery..... 101

M

Maintenance Plan..... 206
Maintenance Schedule Requirements 206
Manual Vehicle Washing..... 210
Mode Switches..... 76

O

Occupants Monitoring System..... 172
Odometer Switch..... 75
Opening the Bonnet..... 216
Ordinary Sunroof Maintenance*.. 215
OTA Update..... 186
Other apps:..... 192

P

Paint Maintenance Tips..... 209
Panoramic View System..... 167
Parking Assist System*..... 163
Power Window Switches..... 73

R

Recycling the High-Voltage Battery 100
Regular Maintenance..... 208
Remote Start..... 111

S

Saving Energy and Extending Vehicle Service Life..... 105
Seat Belt Overview..... 12
Seat Precautions..... 59
Seatback Pockets..... 200
Self-Maintenance..... 213
Smart Access and Start System..... 57

Smart Charging..... 91
Snow Chains..... 119
Starting Inside the Vehicle..... 110
Steering Assist Mode Settings..... 66
Steering Wheel Switches..... 63
Sun Visor..... 200
Sunroof Switch..... 77

T

Traffic Sign Recognition (TSR) System 147
Transponder Mounting Position.. 241
Tyre Pressure Monitoring..... 169
Tyres..... 220

U

USB Ports..... 201
Using AC Charging Piles..... 89
Using DC Charging Piles..... 90
Using Mode 2 Charging Cable*..... 86
Using Seat Belts..... 12

V

Vehicle Cleaning..... 210
Vehicle Condition and Control..... 197
Vehicle Corrosion Prevention..... 209
Vehicle Data..... 234
Vehicle Fire Rescue..... 227
Vehicle Identification..... 238
Vehicle Servicing..... 208
Vehicle Storage Precautions..... 216
Vehicle Use Suggestions..... 104

W

Wading into Water..... 107
Warning Labels..... 239
Window Control Switch on Passenger Side..... 75
Windscreen Washer..... 218
Wiper Blade Maintenance..... 219
Wipers..... 67
Wireless Phone Charger*..... 202

Abbreviations

DTC

Terminologie	Vollständiger Name	Terminologie	Vollständiger Name
ISOFIX	ISO-Fix	EDR	Ereignisdatenrecorder
ABS	Antiblockiersystem	NORMAL	Normal
ECO	Ökonomie	SPORT	Sport
ESC	Elektronischer Stabilitätsregler	EPB	Elektronische Parkbremse
ACC	Adaptive Geschwindigkeitsregelung	FCW	Frontalkollisionswarnsystem
LDA	Unterstützung beim Verlassen der Fahrspur	LDW	Warnung vor Verlassen der Fahrspur
LDP	Verhinderung des Verlassens der Fahrspur	ELKA	Notfall-Spurhalteassistent
BSD	Totwinkelerkennung	DOW	Warnung Tür offen
RCTB	Querverkehrsbremsen hinten	AVH	Automatische Anfahrhilfe
TPMS	Reifendruck-Überwachungssystem	AVAS	Akustisches Fahrzeugwarnsystem
DMS	Fahrerüberwachungssystem	VDC	Steuerung der Fahrzeugdynamik
TCS	Traktionskontrollsystem	HHC	Berghaltesteuerung
HBA	Hydraulische Bremsunterstützung	CDP	Gesteuertes Abbremsen für Parken
HDC	Bergabfahrsteuerung	USB	Universeller serieller Bus
MAX	Maximal	MIN	Minimum
VIN	Fahrzeug-Identifizierungsnummer		

BUILD YOUR DREAMS

Edition date: 12.2025 EN_V0